

HISTORY  
OF THE  
DOMINION OF CANADA  
AND OTHER PARTS OF  
BRITISH AMERICA

BY J. H. COLEMAN

NEW YORK: HENRY HOLT & CO.

1898

NEW YORK: HENRY HOLT & CO.

1898

NEW YORK: HENRY HOLT & CO.

1898

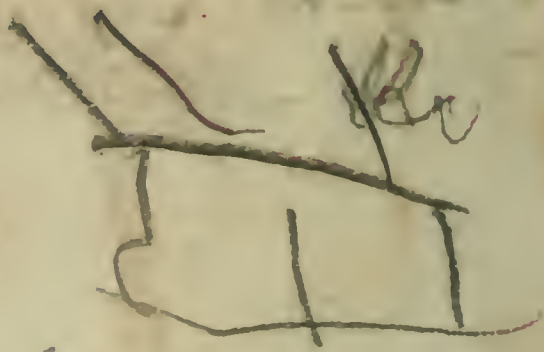
NEW YORK: HENRY HOLT & CO.

1898

*Ma...*

Ms. Sheila T Lambrinos  
425151 Irish Lake Rd  
RR 1  
Markdale ON N0C 1H0

1876



*do not get*  
*...*

*un* *...*

*as do*

LOVELL'S SERIES OF SCHOOL BOOKS.

---

LOVELL'S  
HISTORY OF THE DOMINION OF CANADA,  
AND OTHER PARTS OF  
BRITISH AMERICA.

ILLUSTRATED BY NUMEROUS ENGRAVINGS.

REVISED EDITION FROM NEW PLATES.

"History maketh a young man to be old, without either wrinkles or gray hairs, privileging him with the experience of age without.....its.....infirmities."

FULLER.

Montreal :  
LOVELL PRINTING AND PUBLISHING COMPANY.

FOR SALE AT THE BOOKSTORES.

1876.





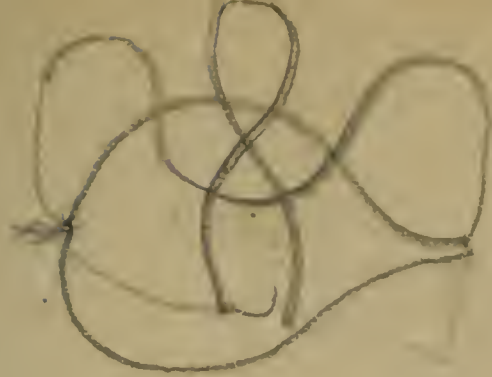
Entered, according to Act of Parliament of Canada, in the year one  
thousand eight hundred and seventy-six,

**BY LOVELL PRINTING AND PUBLISHING COMPANY.**

In the office of the Minister of Agriculture and Statistics at Ottawa.

---





LOVELL'S  
HISTORY OF THE DOMINION OF CANADA,  
AND OTHER PARTS OF BRITISH AMERICA.

---

PRELIMINARY.

RIGHTLY to understand the past and present history of the Province of British North America, we should, did our space permit, include in it a brief reference to the earlier annals of those European nations whose discoveries and enterprise form the background of our own historical times. We should be glad to take a rapid glance at the history of those two great nations which first brought the civilization of Europe to these shores. We should know something of the ancient Britons when they were first visited by the ubiquitous Roman ; and when, from a rude and helpless infancy, they struggled and rose to a more than tribal manhood, even in those days of brief and lawless chieftainship. We should study their after-history, when invasion, disaster, and defeat, like the flames of a fiery furnace, had gradually fused their fitful nationality into that of their successive invaders. Such a study would lead us to feel proud of that race, when, in after-times, the commercial tastes and regal instincts, which led them to plant colonies and establish good government, had slowly

developed the institutions and moulded the national character of the people of that freedom-loving land which we rejoice to call our Mother Country.

Nor should we, did space permit, omit to take an equally rapid glance at the contemporaneous history of that other great and chivalrous people who first discovered and colonized Canada ;—a people who, by many national *souvenirs*, have left upon the broad and noble features of the whole of the North American continent the deep impress of their undaunted courage and active enterprise in exploration and discovery.

After these rapid surveys should be prepared to follow the main subject of the book,—a comprehensive summary of Franco-British American history during the last three hundred years.

We should as a people, in a devout and thankful spirit, “remember all the way which the LORD hath led [us] in the wilderness,” since we were planted here as a cluster of colonies ; how He has preserved to us, and, after much agitation and strife, has even augmented to us the enjoyment of those blessings of civil and religious freedom for which our fathers contended, and for which, as a nation, the empire of our Queen is so pre-eminently distinguished. Under His providential guidance and protection we have reached a period of great political prosperity and social peace, so that the united British Colonies in America may be considered at this day as among the freest and most contented communities in the world.

## PART I.

### Era of Voyages—and Discoveries.

#### CHAPTER I.

#### VOYAGES AND DISCOVERIES OF CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

##### *Early Discoveries—Career of Columbus.*

1. *Christopher Columbus.*—About the year 1441, Christopher Columbus, the discoverer of America, was born in Gen-o-a, a seaport in Northern Italy. In Lisbon, whither he went, he devoted his time to the making of maps and globes, and thus greatly contributed to the information and success of the Portuguese navigators. He framed rules for the calculation of the latitude and longitude by sailors, when at sea, out of sight of land. He also sailed on voyages down the coast of Africa, and became familiar with the sea to the westward.



Christopher Columbus.

2. *The Progress of Geographical Knowledge* up to this time was slow ; but not long after it reached a point which excited great curiosity in the minds of all scholarly and intelligent men. From Marco Polo's statements, it was known that an ocean lay to the east of Asia. The reputed discoveries of countries which had been made by the Northmen, far to the westward, by way of Iceland, together with the statements

---

QUESTIONS.—What notable birth occurred in 1441 ? Give a sketch of the early career of Christopher Columbus. Trace the progress in geographical knowledge in Europe up to the time of Columbus.



of one of these Northmen (that he had been taken as a prisoner to the south amongst civilized people), fully impressed the navigators of the period with the belief that these countries were situated in or near Asia. This belief was based upon the descriptions of Southern Asia by Ptolemy (confirmed as they were by the statements of Marco Polo), that Asia extended far eastward into the ocean. On globes constructed at this time, "Cipango" (Japan) is placed within 70 degrees of the Az-ores, and "India extra Gangem" within 90; whereas they are more than double that number of degrees distant from these islands. It was easy to imagine, therefore, that a navigator, with a little bravery and perseverance, would soon traverse the short distances thus laid down on the map.

3. *Early Efforts of Columbus.* It was under a belief of these suppositions, that Columbus first applied to the King of Portugal for means to prosecute his voyage of discovery to India. Having failed to induce either that king, or Henry VII. of England, to enter into his project, he sought the aid of the court of Spain. After seven years of disappointment, he at length succeeded in inducing



Queen Isabella of Spain.

Isabella, the noble-minded Queen of Spain, to devote a portion of her Castilian patrimony to the encouragement of his scheme of discovery.

4. *Religious Objects of the Expedition.*—So strongly impressed was Columbus with the Christian objects of his mission, that he proposed to consecrate the treasure which he hoped to obtain from it to the pious purpose of rescuing the Holy Sepulchre at Jeru-

---

QUESTIONS.—Where was Southern Asia supposed to be? Give the ancient name of Japan. What was the object of the early efforts of Columbus? Describe the religious views of Columbus.

salem from the hands of the infidel Saracens. His more immediate design in undertaking this voyage to Asia—or India, as it was then called—was to convert the Great Khan of Tartary and his subjects to Christianity; and for this purpose Columbus actually took out letters with him to that monarch.

5. *Voyage of Columbus.*—The port of Palos [pa-loce] in Spain was selected as the place of embarkation. For some misdemeanor, this port was required to furnish the king with two small vessels for a year. After repeated delays and discouragements, a little fleet of three vessels was, by the aid of the brothers Pinzon,—two courageous navigators,—got ready for sea; and on the 3rd of August, 1492, Columbus set sail on his memorable voyage. On leaving the harbor he steered directly for the Canary Islands, where he arrived on the 9th. Here he remained until the 6th of September, making repairs. On the 9th of that month he passed Ferro, (the last of the Canary



The Fleet of Columbus.

Isles,) and with a feeling of sadness and awe, struck out into the unknown Atlantic. For several days the ships glided rapidly onward in their course and, with the aid of the steady trade-winds; quickly increased their dis-

tance from Europe. Apprehension and alarm arose on every side at the unvarying course of the wind,—at the increasing length of the voyage,—at the variation of the needle of the compass, and at other occurrences, which

---

QUESTIONS.—Where did Columbus embark? Why was this port selected? Who accompanied Columbus? Give the number of ships and date of sailing. At what place did Columbus stop? When did Columbus set out? Describe the state of feeling on board the little fleet.



the superstitious sailors regarded as ominous of evil. Columbus was daily beset by the mutinous murmurs and discontent of his crew, who threatened to throw him into the sea, and return to Europe. His courageous spirit, and the religious belief in a special providence in his favor, kept him calm and firm in the midst of the painful uncertainty and treacherous fears of his comrades. Time after time, the morning haze and the evening cloud-bank, revealing a fancied coast or island, beguiled the mutinous sailors from their fatal purpose, and raised the hopes of all, to be in mid-day again dashed down in bitter disappointment and chagrin. Thus the weary days and nights wore on, until Columbus himself almost faltered in his purpose. At length a day, long memorable in the annals of great nations, dawned upon the little fleet; and the sight of several land birds, some sea weed, and the twigs and branches of drifting trees, revived the spirits of the dispirited and mutinous seamen. As night drew on, the keen eyes of the commander—made doubly sensitive by long and weary watching—detected the glimmer of a beacon-light, as it glanced in the uncertain gloom of midnight. Oh, how long and painful were those hours of suspense to the almost fainting heart of Columbus! At length, as the twilight advanced, hope dawned upon the expectant mariners; and ere the sun appeared above the horizon, the impassioned voices of the crews shouted, in tumultuous joy, the thrilling words, “Land! Land!” And so it was—there lay before them a beauteous island of the New World, revealed in all the loveliness of a tropical clime. On that memorable day, the 11th of October, 1492, Columbus left his ship. On landing, he kissed the soil with religious fervor, and planted the flag of Spain on the Island of San Sal-va-dor. [-dore], in the Ba-ha-ma group. In a spirit of devout thankfulness for the accomplishment of so great an event, the crews chanted the *Te*

---

QUESTIONS.—How did Columbus control his companions? Mention the circumstances under which Columbus first saw the new land. How did Columbus express his gratitude to God? Under what impressions did he act on landing?



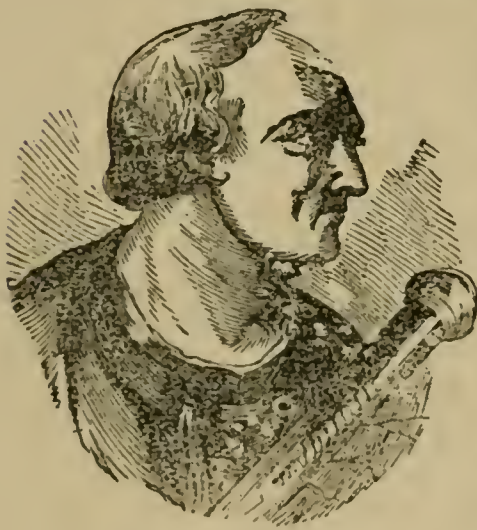
*Deum*, and spent several days in unrestrained admiration of the island, and in personal enjoyment.

6. *Further Discoveries of Columbus*.—Columbus was delighted with the appearance of the island, and with its inhabitants. He firmly believed that he had reached an island at the extremity of India; and, in that belief, gave the name of Indians to the mild and gentle natives whom he found there. He treated them most kindly, and sought to ascertain from them where they had procured their gold ornaments. They pointed to the south, and tried to convey to him an idea of the great wealth of the king, and the inexhaustible riches of the country. After exchanging glass beads and other trinkets with the natives for gold and cotton, he weighed anchor and proceeded southward in search of Marco Polo's famous island of Cipango, or Japan. On his way he visited several other islands, and at length reached a very large and beautiful one, called by the natives Cuba. This he thought was either Cipango itself, or the main land of India, in the dominions of the Great Khan. After consulting his maps and listening to the pantomimic descriptions of the natives, he despatched an embassy into the interior in search of the city of the sovereign to whom he had letters. The embassy soon returned disappointed. Columbus, after having consulted the natives, stood to the eastward, and discovered His-pan-i-o-la, or Hayti [hay-tee]. Here he was kindly received by Gu-a-ca-na-ga-ri, a native cazique, or chieftain. While on this coast his ship was wrecked; but out of the pieces of the wreck he constructed a small fort to protect his crew, as well as the timid natives, from the fierce Caribs.—a neighboring tribe of which he had heard. He manned the little fort with the guns of the ship, and left there such of the crew as wished to remain on the island. Shortly afterwards he set sail, by way of the Azores and Portugal,

---

QUESTIONS.—How was he received by the inhabitants? What did he name them, and why? What did he next do? On leaving the Island in what direction did Columbus steer? Mention his next discoveries? At what places did Columbus touch on his way home?

for Palos, at which place he arrived after many adventures, on the 15th of March, 1493,—having been absent from Spain about seven months. There was great rejoicing on his arrival, and he himself was ennobled. He made three other voyages to America (the last in 1502), and died in 1506. His remains were interred at Havana, in Cuba.



Americus Vespucius.

7. *A-mer-i-cus Ves-pu-ci-us*, a distinguished Florentine navigator and scholar, made four voyages to the New World. Having, in the year after the death of Columbus (when his statements could not be refuted), written an elaborate account of his voyages, in which he falsely claimed the honor of having first reached the main land, and of having made a separate voyage to the continent; which was, by common usage, named after him. He died in the year 1514.

## CHAPTER II.

### VOYAGES OF THE CABOTS, CORTEREAL, VERAZZANI, CARTIER, ROBERVAL AND OTHERS.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Discovery of Newfoundland, Canada and Acadie.*

1. *Cabot's Discovery of Newfoundland.*—The news of the amazing discovery of Columbus soon reached England,

---

QUESTIONS.—How and why was the name "America" first given to the New World? To what subject does the second chapter relate?



then a maritime power of inferior importance. John Cabot, a Venetian merchant, residing at Bristol, fired with a spirit of emulation, sought for and obtained a commission, in 1496, from Henry VII., to make a voyage to the New World. Henry the more readily entered into Cabot's scheme, from being mortified to find that, by refusing to aid Columbus in his great undertaking, he had lost a glori-



Sebastian Cabot.

ous opportunity of linking his name with a memorable discovery. In June, 1497, Cabot left Bristol with his son Sebastian for the New World. After crossing the Atlantic, he reached a coast on the 24th of June, which he named *Prima Vista*, and which is supposed to have been some part of Nova Scotia, or of the northern part of Trinity Bay coast, Newfoundland. On St. John's day, he came to an island, which he named St. Jean, or St. John (afterwards Prince Edward). By virtue of Cabot's discoveries, the English laid claim to the islands and lands which he had visited. In 1498, Sebastian Cabot \* made a second voyage, and sailed as far north as Hudson Bay, on his way to China. Unable to proceed farther, he turned southward and went as far as Flor-i-da. On his way thither, he touched at Newfoundland, which

---

\* Sebastian Cabot, son of Sir John Cabot, and a more celebrated navigator than his father, was born in England, in 1477. He sailed with him from Bristol, in 1497, and passed down the coast of America from latitude  $56^{\circ}$  to latitude  $36^{\circ}$ . Under the patronage of the Court of Spain, he made a voyage, in 1525, as far south as the Brazils. Having entered the River La Plata, he erected a fort at St. Salvador, which he had discovered and named. He was a very distinguished navigator; and to him we are indebted for having first detected the variation of the mariner's compass. He published a volume before his death, containing an account of his voyages and discoveries. He died in 1557, aged 80.

---

QUESTIONS.—What led to the expeditions of the Cabots? Describe the course of their voyage. Mention the places which Sebastian Cabot discovered. Sketch his life.



he named Ba-ca-lé-os,—the native, as well as the Breton, or Basque [bask], name for codfish, which abounds on the coast. From this circumstance it is supposed that the Breton fishermen had frequented these shores before they were visited by Sebastian Cabot.

2. *Cortereal's Voyages*.—In 1500, Gaspard Cor-te-re-al, a Portuguese,\* made a voyage to Lab-ra-dor, Newfoundland, and New England. Slavery being an important traffic with the Portuguese, Cortereal captured fifty Indians, whom he sold as slaves on his return to Europe. He made a second voyage in 1501, and having reached Hudson Strait, was never afterwards heard of. His brother Michael is also supposed to have perished in 1502, while endeavoring to seek out and rescue him.

3. *Verazzani's Voyage*.†—About this time the value of the cod-fisheries attracted the notice of the French. In 1506, Denys, of Honfleur, explored the Gulf of St. Lawrence; and in 1508, Aubert of Dieppe [de-epp], did the same. The French fishermen also frequented the Banks of Newfoundland. In 1518, the Baron de Léry attempted to settle Sable Island, and left some cattle there. In 1524, John Ver-az-za-ni, a Florentine navigator, in command of four French vessels, made a voyage to America. He made



John Verazzan..

\* Gaspard Cortereal, a Portuguese, was despatched from Lisbon by the king of Portugal, in 1500. He discovered Labrador and Greenland. (His father is said to have discovered Newfoundland in 1463.) He again left Lisbon for the New World in 1501, but was never heard of afterwards.

† John Verazzani was a Florentine navigator in the service of France. In 1521, he took possession of the coast from Carolina to Nova Scotia, and called it New France. Having given spirituous liquors to the natives at one place, they called it Man-na-ha-tan, or place of drunkenness.—afterwards contracted to Man-hat-tan Island, now the site of the city of New York. He is said to have made another voyage in 1525, but it is not known.

QUESTIONS.—What was peculiar about the name which Cabot gave to Newfoundland? Mention the chief incidents of Cortereal's voyages. How did he treat the Indians? Give a sketch of the lives of Cortereal and Verazzani. Describe Verazzani's voyage.

a second voyage, under the patronage of Francis I., in 1525, and explored more than 2000 miles of coast, from  $34^{\circ}$  down to  $50^{\circ}$ . He returned to France during that year. In consequence of these discoveries the French king claimed possession of all places visited by Verazzani, He is said to have made a third voyage in the same year, but what became of him was never known.

4. *Cartier's Discovery of Canada.*—The supposed ill fate of Verazzani deterred the French for several years from any further attempt to explore the New World. In 1534,—nine years afterwards,—however, Philip Chabot [shah-bo], admiral of France, urged the king, Francis I., not to let Spain excel him in enterprise, but to establish a colony in the New World. He recommended that Jacques Cartier, [zhak-car-te-ay], a noted navigator of St. Ma-lo, should command an expedition of discovery to the New World.\* The Emperor Charles V. of Spain, and Joan III. of Portugal, having already sought to establish colonies there, protested against the projected expedition of Francis I., who sarcastically replied, "I should like to see the clause in our Father Adam's will and testament which bequeaths



Jacques Cartier.

---

\* Jacques Cartier, the discoverer of Canada, was born at St. Malo, France, in 1500. He was despatched to the west by Francis I. in 1534. On the 20th April, he sailed from St. Malo, reached Newfoundland on the 10th May, the Bay des Chaleurs [sha-loor] on the 9th July, the coast of Gaspé [gas-pay] on the 24th, and returned to France in August. He made his second voyage in 1535. On the festival of St. Laurent, in August, he reached a bay of the gulf and river which, in honor of the day, he called the St. Lawrence. In September he reached Stad-a-co-na, the present site of Quebec, where Don-na-co-na, an Algonquin [al-gong-kangg] chief, welcomed him. In October he visited Hochelaga, [ho-she-lah-ga], an Indian village near the site of Montreal, where a chief of the Huron Indians welcomed him. He very soon afterwards returned to France, forcibly taking with him the chief, Donnacona. In 1541, as second in command to M. de Roberval, he again visited Canada; but having met with many disasters, he returned to France, and died soon after.

---

QUESTIONS.—What led to the despatch of another expedition from France to America? Why was it opposed? When and from what place did Cartier sail from Europe? Sketch his life. What did Francis I. say in reply to Joam and Charles?



to my royal brothers alone so vast a heritage." At length, on the 20th of April, 1534, Cartier left St. Malo, a port on the coast of Brittany, with two ships. Twenty days after, he reached a cape on the Newfoundland coast, which he named Bona Vista. He turned southwards for



Cartier's Ship.

a short distance, and then northwards to the Strait of Belle Isle [bel-eel]. Passing through this strait, he turned southwards until he reached a coast, now known as that of New Brunswick. Here, on the 9th of July, he entered a Bay, which, in proceeding up, he and his companions experienced such intense heat that he called it the "Baie des Chaleurs." Passing northwards out of this bay, he

rounded the peninsula, and, on the 24th of July, landed on the coast since known as "Gaspé,"—an Indian name for Land's end. There he erected a cross thirty feet high, on which he placed a shield bearing the fleur-de-lys [flur-de-lee] and an inscription, as emblematical of the new sovereignty of France in America. Thus was accomplished a most memorable event; and thus was Canada silently and unconsciously incorporated into a mighty empire; and thus too was completed that threefold act of discovery in America—the West Indies, by Spain; Newfoundland, by England; and Canada, by France,—which, as a natural consequence, placed side by side on a vast unknown continent, the symbols of the sovereignty of three of the greatest nations of Europe.

5. *Cartier's Further Discoveries.*—Cartier did not long remain on the Gaspé coast; but having made a little further exploration, he turned his face homewards, taking with him two natives. These Indians having told him of

---

QUESTIONS.—Describe the course of Cartier's voyage. At what places in New Brunswick and Canada did he land? How did he assert the sovereignty of France? What is said of other nations?



the existence of a great river, which they called Hoche-laga, leading up so far into the country, that "no man had (so far as they knew) ever yet traced it to its source," Cartier felt most anxious to explore it, and the countries through which it flowed. On his return to France, the news of his discovery, and the account given by the two Indians of the great river yet unexplored, were received with so much interest, that on the 19th May, 1535, Cartier again left St. Malo in command of three ships. After a tempestuous voyage, he arrived at Newfoundland on the 7th of July. Here he waited for two of his ships, which had been separated from him; and on the 7th of August he proceeded to explore the Gulf which he had visited the year before. On the 10th, he anchored in a bay at the mouth of a river, now called St. John. To this bay he gave the name of St. Lawrence,—having entered it on the festival of that saint. The name thus given to the little bay has since been applied to the great gulf and noble river which Cartier was the first European to discover and explore. On the 15th, he reached a large island, to which he gave the name of L'Assomption [las-son<sup>e</sup>-se-on]. The Indian name of this island, Na-tis-co-tee, has since been changed to An-ti-cos-ti. On the 1st of September, Cartier reached the mouth of a deep and gloomy river, called the Saguenay [sagg-é-nee], known by the Indian name of the Chicoutimi, or deep river.

6. *Cartier and Donnacona*.—Having passed an island, which, from the abundance of hazel-nuts found on it, he called Isle aux Coudres, Cartier, on the 7th of September, came to a large and fertile island, which was covered with wild grapes. To this island he gave the name of Bacchus; but it is now known as the Isle of Orleans. Here he sent his two Gaspé Indians ashore to make inquiries, and to propitiate the natives in favor of the

---

QUESTIONS.—What did Cartier further do? Did the news of Cartier's discoveries lead to anything? Describe the course of his second voyage. How did the name St. Lawrence originate? What other names did Cartier give?

new-comers. Next day he was received with friendly courtesy by the Algonquin [al-gon<sup>g</sup>-kan<sup>g</sup>] chief, Don-na-cò-na. Proceeding a short distance up the stream, he moored his vessels for the winter in a basin where the river St. Charles (which he named St. Croix) [khrwha] mingles its waters with the St. Lawrence. In the angle formed by the confluence of these two rivers stood the Indian village of Stad-a-co-na, to which Cartier was welcomed by his new friend, the Algonquin chief. Cartier was much struck with the beauty of the surrounding scenery, and with the appearance of the bold cape or headland which rose almost perpendicularly along the left, or northern, bank of the noble river, to which, at its narrowest part, the Indians had given a name since memorable as that of Képec, or Quebec, which, in the Indian tongue, signifies a "strait."

7. *Cartier at Hochelaga.*—Cartier did not long remain at Stadacona. Having heard of a larger village, or kan-na-ta,\*—a native encampment,—up the river, he left two of his vessels behind, and, on the 2nd of October, reached Ho-che-la-ga, situated on a large and fertile island, near the site of the present city of Montreal. Here he was well received by upwards of 1,000 Huron Indians, and treated with much kindness. The feeble old *ag-o-han-na*, or chief of the Hurons, regarded him as a superior being, who was able to renew his youth, and to heal the sick. Many of the sick were brought to him to be cured, over whom he read a portion of St. John's Gospel and prayed, making at the same time the sign of the cross. He found the encampment, or village, well planned and admirably

---

\* The Algonquin Indians at Stadacona (Quebec) having thus intimated to Cartier that *Kan-na-ta*, a collection of wigwams, or native Huron village was farther up the river, he probably understood them to apply that word to the whole country lying beyond him. Hence, in this way, it is likely that the name *Kannata*, or *Canada*, was given to the entire country which Cartier was then engaged in exploring.

---

QUESTIONS.—Describe Cartier's visit to Donnacona and his village. Explain the Indian name of Quebec. What is said of the supposed derivation of the name of Canada? Describe Cartier's visit to Hochelaga.

defended. Near the village stood a lofty hill,—to which he gave the name of Mount Royal; and from the top of which a panorama of great beauty and extent spread out before him.

8. *Return to France.*—Cartier did not long remain at Hochelaga, but returned to Quebec early in October. Fearing hostilities, he made a strong enclosure near his ships, and placed cannon in position to defend it. During the following winter his men suffered much from scurvy and cold; he was therefore anxious to return to France. On the 3rd of May he erected a cross, with the arms of France upon it, in token of having taken possession of the country on behalf of his sovereign. He then suddenly seized Donnacona and four other Indians, and on the 6th of May proceeded down the river, but did not reach St. Malo until the 8th July, 1536. These Indians with their chief never returned to Canada, as they died soon after reaching France. Before he died, Donnacona and the other Indians were baptized with great ceremony in the cathedral of Rouen [roo-on<sup>s</sup>].

9. *Expedition of Roberval.*—Owing to religious dissensions in France, and to a war with Spain, five years elapsed after Cartier's return, before another expedition was projected. To the command of this expedition, the king appointed Jean François de la Roque [roke], Lord of Rob-er-val in Pic-âr-dy.\* Cartier was named second in command. M. de Rob-er-val also received a commission as viceroy of the new colony. A delay having occurred, Cartier was, in May, 1541, despatched in advance. Roberval followed him, in April of the next year. In the meantime, Cartier reached the scene of his first visit;

---

\* Jean François de la Roque, Sieur de Roberval, a native of Picardy, France, was appointed Viceroy of Canada in 1540, and sailed thence, from Rochelle, in 1542. He met Cartier (returning to France) at St. John's, Newfoundland, in June. Having wintered at Cape Rouge, above Quebec, he, in June, 1543, explored the River Saguenay.

---

QUESTIONS.—Describe his act of treachery to the Indians. What steps were taken in sending out Roberval's expedition? Give a sketch of Roberval's life.



but fearing the hostility of the Indians, on account of his treachery to Donnacona, he removed a little farther up the river, to Cape Rouge. Here a little settlement was made (protected by two forts) which was named Charlesbourg Royal. Leaving Vicomte de Beaupré [bopravay] in command, Cartier sailed up to Hochelaga and tried to pass the Sault St. Louis (now called the Lachine Rapids); but being unsuccessful, he returned to Cape Rouge for the winter. In the spring he was treated with such hostility by the Indians that he set out at once for France. At Newfoundland he was met by Roberval, the viceroy, who commanded him to return to Canada. To avoid doing so, he weighed anchor in the night and sailed for France. He died there soon after. For his eminent services he was ennobled by the king; and license to trade in Canada was granted to his heirs for twelve years after his death. Roberval continued his voyage to the place where Cartier had wintered, at Cape Rouge. Here he remained, and in the spring proceeded to explore the Saguenay River. After suffering various hardships, he returned to France in 1543. For six years afterwards, no effort was made to colonize Canada.

10. *Other futile expeditions—Feudal System introduced.*—During the next fifty years little was accomplished. Colonies in Brazil and Florida were projected; but after a trial they failed, and were abandoned. In 1598, the Marquis de la Roche [rosh] was constituted the first lieutenant-general of the king, and was invested by him with power “to grant leases of lands in New France, in form of fiefs, to men of gentle blood.” This was the origin of the feudal system which was afterwards introduced into Canada. It was subsequently modified by Cardinal Richelieu into a seigniorial tenure, which was not finally abolished until 1854. The Marquis sailed for Nova Scotia, but only reached Sable Island, where he

---

QUESTIONS.—Trace Cartier's further career. How did the Roberval expedition end? What other steps were taken to promote colonization in France and what was the result?

landed forty French convicts, until he could select the site of a settlement. This a storm prevented him from doing; and after touching on the coast of Nova Scotia, he returned to France, leaving the convicts to their fate. In 1605 the king sent Chedotel, a Norman pilot, to them with relief, but only twelve were found alive. These were brought back to France, and pardoned by king Henri IV., on account of their sufferings. The marquis, having lost all his fortune, died unhappily soon after.

---

## PART II.

### Summary Sketch of the History of Canada.

#### CHAPTER III.

#### FIRST SETTLEMENT OF CANADA, 1603–1608.

##### Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

##### *Causes leading to the settlement of New France.*

1. *Commercial Efforts.*—Not only did French fishermen continue to frequent the coast of Newfoundland, but under the patronage of Henri IV., Dupont Gravé [due-pon<sup>s</sup>-gra-vay], a merchant of St. Malo, and Chauvin [shaw-van<sup>s</sup>], a master-mariner of Rouen [rwan], made several voyages to Tad-ou-sac, and brought home cargoes of the rich furs which had been collected there from places north of it. A stone building [the first ever put up in Canada] was erected there, and for a time the fur trade was prosperous. Subsequent voyages, however, having proved unsuccessful, De Chaste, the governor of Dieppe [de-epp], formed a company of Rouen and other merchants to prosecute the traffic in furs more vigorously.

2. *Champlain's First Voyage.*—The first expedition to

---

QUESTIONS.—What is said of feudal system and the seigniorial tenure? Give the particulars of the Marquis de la Roche's expedition and of the fate of the convicts and of himself.

Canada, projected by this company, consisted of three small ships. It was placed under the command of Samuel de Champlain [shaum-plan<sup>5</sup>], a distinguished captain in the French navy.\*

In company with Dupont Gravé he reached the St. Lawrence in 1603, and lost no time in pushing his way up the river as far as Hochelaga, stopping at Three Rivers to examine its fitness for a trading post. When he reached Hochelaga, he found it deserted except by a few Algonquins. With some of these Indians he essayed to pass the rapids of the Sault St. Louis [soo-san<sup>2</sup>-loo-ee] (Lachine) in his boats, but could not, owing to the strong current. He obtained from the Indians rude sketches on bark of the river and country above the rapids, and carefully noted all he saw. Having prepared for the information of the King, Henri IV., a chart, illustrating his explorations, he and Dupont Gravé returned to France.

3. *Champlain's Second Voyage—Acadie settled.*—The French monarch (Henri IV.) regarded Champlain's explorations with favor.† Upon De Chaste's death, he con-

---

\* Samuel de Champlain, a native of Brouage, in France, explored the St. Lawrence, with Dupont Gravé, from Tadousac to Three Rivers, in 1603-7. On the third July, 1608, he founded the city of Quebec. In 1609, he ascended the river Richelieu [reech-el-yu], and discovered Lake Champlain. In 1615, he ascended the Ottawa to Lake Nip-is-sing; descended French River to Georgian Bay; and from Lake Simcoe he passed, by a long portage, to the head-water of the River Trent, and thence to Lake Ontario. He then crossed to Os-we-go. He had many unnecessary conflicts with the Iroquois Indians. In 1629, his capital was captured by the English, under Sir David Kertk, but, in 1632, restored. In 1633, he was appointed the first governor of Canada. He died in 1635, very deeply regretted.

† Henri de Bourbon, the celebrated King of France and Navarre, was born at Paris in 1553. He was the third son of Anthony de Bourbon and Jane d'Albret, heiress of Henri d'Albret, King of Navarre. On the sudden death of his mother, who was a Huguenot, and who had brought up her son to the Protestant faith, he became King of Navarre. Just before his death by assassination, Henri III., King of France, acknowledged the King of Navarre as his lawful successor. Henri IV. had, however, to wage a war against "the League" before he obtained the crown. One of his splendid victories over the Leaguers is celebrated by Lord Macaulay in his stirring ode on the "Battle of Ivry." At length, Henri, having abjured the Protestant faith, the opposing party acknowledged him as King

---

QUESTIONS.—Mention the causes which led to the first formation of a French company of merchants to promote trade with the New French Colony. Describe Champlain's first voyage, and give a sketch of his life.



ferred upon Pierre Dugas, Sieur de Monts, [mohn<sup>g</sup>] governor of Pons, (a distinguished Huguenot), greatly enlarged trading privileges. He also made him lieutenant-general of Acadie.\* In company with Champlain, Dupont Gravé and De Poutrincourt, [poo-trahn<sup>g</sup>-koo], de Monts, with a very mixed class of colonists, sailed in March, 1604, for Acadie, (Nova Scotia), which he preferred for his proposed colony.



Henri IV of France.

De Monts having reached Cape la Hève, Nova Scotia, waited a month for Dupont Gravé's store ship, at Port Mouton (so called from a sheep which had fallen overboard out of the ship). They then made their way round the peninsula into a large bay which de Monts named La Baie Française, (now called Fundy). While Dupont Gravé sailed for Tadousac to trade with the Indians, de Monts pursued his voyage, and discovered a beautiful spot, near an enclosed sheet of water which he named, Port Royal (An-nap-o-lis). Poutrincourt, who was delighted with the place, selected it as a site for a settlement; and de Monts, who by his patent owned one half of the continent, made him a grant of it. This grant—the first ever made in America—was afterwards confirmed by letters patent from Henri IV. De Monts then sailed in search of a suitable place for his new colonists. He discovered the St. John river, and proceeding on, at length

of France in 1593. To his distinguished minister, the Duke de Sully, he was indebted for an able administration of the finance and of the general affairs of the kingdom. After reigning twenty-one years he was in turn assassinated, and in 1610 was succeeded by his son Louis XIII.

\* This name first appears in a public document in 1604, when Pierre Du Guast, or Dugas, sieur de Monts, petitioned King Henri IV., for leave to colonize "La Cadie, or Acadie." The name is supposed to be derived from *La-quod-die*, the Indian name of a local fish called a pollock.

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of Champlain's second voyage in 1604. Mention the discoveries which he made in this expedition. Who succeeded de Chaste? What is said of Poutrincourt's settlement and the grant which was made of it to him?

fixed upon a rocky islet, at the mouth of another river, which he named St. Croix. Here he remained during the winter, while Champlain explored the coast as far as Penobscot. In the following summer he went in search of a more eligible site for his settlement; but an untoward accident having occurred at Cape Cod, he became discouraged and returned to St. Croix.

4. *Removal of the Colony, and its Abandonment.*—Not wishing to remain another winter at St. Croix, de Monts removed the colony to Port Royal. Unpleasant news, however, induced him to return at once to France, where he found strong opposition to his colonizing schemes. Through the zeal of Poutrincourt and Marc Lescarbot (a lawyer and poet) he was enabled to fit out another ship and to despatch it to the colony in charge of these two friends. In the meantime Dupont Gravé, who had employed his leisure in exploring the neighboring coasts, returned to France; while Poutrincourt and Champlain continued the explorations, leaving Lescarbot in charge of the colony. Lescarbot busied himself in tilling the soil, and in collecting materials for a projected history of New France. His versatility and vivacity infused new life into the self-exiled colonists at Port Royal; but in the midst of their enjoyment, news arrived that the de Monts' charter had been rescinded, and that the company refused any longer to bear the expense of the colony. There was, therefore, no alternative but to abandon it; and much to the grief of Membertou, (the venerable Indian sagamore of Annapolis, who had been their fast friend,) Poutrincourt, Champlain, Lescarbot, and other colonists, quitted the settlement and returned to France in 1607.

5. *Champlain's Third Voyage—Quebec Founded.*—De Monts, having transferred all interest in Port Royal to Poutrincourt, sought for and obtained in 1607, a renewal of the *fur* trade monopoly for one year, on condition that

---

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of de Monts' exploration and settlement at St. Croix. Why did he abandon it? How did the settlement of Port Royal succeed? By whom and what were the explorations made? What is said of Lescarbot?



he would colonize Canada, with a view to open up through it a route to India and China. (See the Chapter on NOVA SCOTIA, page .) De Monts lost no time in fitting out an expedition of two vessels, under Champlain and Dupont Gravé, to traffic with the Indians, and to explore the St. Lawrence. Champlain sailed from France on the 13th April, 1608, and reached Tadousac on the 3rd June. Dupont Gravé had been there a few days before him, but was in the hostile hands of some Basque traders, who refused to let him trade with the Indians. The arrival of Champlain set matters right, and he proceeded up the river. On 3rd July, he reached the spot which, seventy-three years before, had been visited by Cartier. The beautiful fall on the north side of the St. Lawrence, and at the head of the Isle of Orleans, he named "*le Sault de Montmorenci*," after the Admiral of France. No trace of Stadacona remained. Near the site of that village, and at a place called Kébec by the Indians, Champlain erected a rude fort,—in this way foreshadowing the future destiny of a spot which has since become so famous in the military annals of two great nations.—Thus, after long years of retribution, misfortune, and doubt, a footing was obtained, and the infant capital of New France in America was founded in Canada. From that centre of civilization radiated, in later years, a series of French settlements, which to the east embraced the islands of Newfoundland, Cape Breton, and Prince Edward, as well as Acadie, or Nova Scotia, and stretched away to the west from Montreal to Frontenac, Niagara, Pen-e-tan-guish-ene, and Detroit, and thence across the continent to Flor-i-da and Louisiana [loo-ees-e-an-a.]

---

QUESTIONS.—Where did Champlain make his third voyage and what was its object? What is said of his having founded the capital of New France and of the after-extent of the French settlements in America?



## CHAPTER IV.

SKETCH OF FRENCH RULE—FIRST PERIOD,  
1608–1672.

## Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Champlain's Colony—Early Trading Efforts—Unfortunate Indian League—Iroquois Wars—Political Progress—Development of the Fur trade—Colonial Trading Contests.*

1. *Champlain's First Discovery.*—Ere Champlain's colony was settled in its new home a shadow fell upon it. A conspiracy was formed among his own men to kill him, and to give the Basque traders possession of the place. Remorse, however, seized one of the traitors and he revealed the plot. The ringleader was hanged, and his co-conspirators were sent as convicts to the galleys. Thus the little colony was providentially saved. Anxious to explore the country near his new settlement, Champlain entered into friendly relations with the neighboring tribes. The Hurons, and Ottawas, or Algonquins, being oppressed by a superior race unknown to Champlain, gladly accepted his offer. In May, 1609, a war-party having come to Quebec, accompanied him up the St. Lawrence. On reaching the River of the Iroquois, (a tributary of the St. Lawrence,)\* he turned southwards with his dusky

---

\* This river so noted in the early history of Canada, and in the desolating wars between the French colonists and the Iroquois, was first known as the *River of the Iroquois*, (as it led up to the eastern portion of the Iroquois territory, which was inhabited by the Mohawks.) It was afterwards named the *Richelieu* from the distinguished French Cardinal of that name when M. de Montmagny [mont'-man-ye] erected Fort Richelieu at the mouth of the river, as a barrier against the Iroquois, in 1631-2. Subsequently the river was named *St. Lawrence*, (after a captain of the Carignan [car-eeen-yan] regiment, who rebuilt Fort Richelieu). The river was also

---

QUESTIONS.—To what does chapter IV. relate? What event occurred at the settlement? What is said of the Iroquois River?

allies, and continued his canoe-voyage up the stream, until he came to that beautiful lake which, as a memorial of his discoveries, still bears his name.\* [See paragraph 33 of Chapter V.]

2. *Fatal Effects of Champlain's Indian League.*—Champlain proceeded up this lake to its further extremity. Here he and his Indian allies encountered a band of Iroquois, who gave battle; but they were utterly defeated by the superior arms of the new friends of the Algonquins. Thus, in an unprovoked contest, the first Indian blood was unwarrantably shed in Canada by the white man. Bitterly and fiercely, and for many years, was this fatal error again and again avenged, until the lives of hundreds of French colonists had atoned for the life of every Iroquois who had fallen in this first memorable battle with the European colonists in Canada.

3. *Champlain's Further Discoveries.*—Champlain soon afterwards returned to Quebec, and thence to France. He was received with great favor by Henri IV., to whom he brought presents of belts of wampum, porcupine quills, and other curiosities. As a mark of favor the king gave the name of New France to his new American possessions. Although de Monts had failed to obtain a renewal of his trading privileges, he nevertheless, with the aid of the Merchants' Company, fitted out in 1610 a fourth expedition, under the command of Champlain and Dupont Gravé. This expedition reached Tadousac after a pleasant passage of eighteen days. Here they found rival fur traders; but such was Champlain's love of adventure that he deter-

---

called Chambly, after de Chamblie, a captain of the same regiment, who erected Fort St. Louis, which was afterwards known as Fort Chambly. M. de Salières [sal-ee-ere], another Carignan captain, erected Fort St. Thérèse, [thay-race] nine miles above Chambly, on the same river. M. de Mothe, a fourth Carignan captain, erected Fort Ste. Anne on Mothe Island, at the foot of Lake Champlain.

\* This Lake, so long a highway between the territories of the hostile Hurons and Iroquois Indians, received from them the name of Can-i-a-de-re-gu-a-ran-te, or the "Lake Gate of the Country."

---

QUESTIONS.—What notable discovery did Champlain make? Give the Indian name of the lake. Give the particulars of Champlain's fatal Indian league against the Iroquois. How was Champlain received in France? What name did the king give to his new possessions?

mined to make further explorations. He joined the Huron Indians in another attack on an entrenched camp of the Iroquois, at the mouth of the River of the Iroquois. The contest was a severe one; but the arms of the French quickly decided it in favor of their Indian allies. Champlain soon afterwards returned to Quebec, where, tired of Indian warfare, he devoted himself for a time to the culture of flowers and fruit.

4. *Death of Henry IV.—Trading Post at Montreal.*—At Quebec, Champlain heard with profound regret of the assassination of King Henry IV. De Monts' influence at court having now entirely ceased, commercial rivalry nearly ruined the fur trade. Champlain returned to France in August, but revisited Canada in the spring of 1611, to make another effort to retrieve de Monts' fortunes and those of his trading associates. With this view he determined to erect a permanent trading post as far up above Quebec as the rapids would permit, and also one easily accessible to the Ottawa and neighboring Indian tribes. After visiting various places, Champlain at length selected Mount Royal, which lay at the foot of the Sault St. Louis (Lachine), and at the confluence of the two great rivers (the Ottawa and the St. Lawrence). To the adjacent island he gave the name of Ste. Hélène, after his wife. Having cleared the ground he proceeded to erect his new trading fort. He fixed it on the spot lately occupied by the hospital of the Grey Nuns of Montreal (Sœurs Grises), and named it *Place Royale*. No sooner had he commenced his labors than a crowd of trading adventurers, who had followed him from France, appeared at Montreal, and sought to monopolize the fur traffic with the Indians. Not wishing that they should profit by his labors, Champlain returned to Quebec, and soon after left for France to confer with de Monts on the depressed state of the affairs of the Company. De Monts, engrossed in other matters

---

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of Champlain's further explorations and Indian contests. What sad event occurred in 1610? Give particulars of the new trading fort established at Hochelaga by Champlain. What island near this fort did he name? Mention the discouragements he met with.



and much discouraged, left Champlain to his own resources. Knowing that without the aid of some powerful hand to assist them, the colony would soon sink, Champlain made a great effort, and in 1612 prevailed upon Prince Charles de Bourbon, Count de Soissons [swaw-son] to become the patron of Canada. De Soissons was commissioned as lieutenant general (with Champlain as his deputy), but being attacked with fever, he died soon afterwards. Henri de Bourbon, Prince de Condé,\* however, took his place.

5. *Trading Disputes—Ottawa Explorations.*—Champlain foreseeing the ruinous consequences of unrestricted rivalry, proposed to share his new trading privileges with his competitors in the fur traffic. The Rouen and St. Malo traders accepted his offer, and formed a Merchants' Company; but those of Rochelle stood out, and preferred the chances of an illicit trade. He had, therefore, great difficulty in reconciling the disputes which arose out of the new trading privileges which had been conferred upon the Merchants' Company; but at length he partially succeeded, and, in 1613, again embarked for Canada. Stopping a short time at Quebec, he proceeded up the river to Hochelaga (Montreal). Here he did not delay long, but turned his attention to exploration. Taking the northern channel of the river, Champlain, accompanied by Etienne Brulé,† his faithful interpreter, and his comrades, soon entered the Ottawa and proceeded up that river. Surprised at its uniform breadth and volume, they still advanced in the hope of reaching China and Japan, by way

---

\* This prince should not be confounded with his son, "the great Condé," who was born in 1621, and who afterwards became so famous in the French war against Spain, under the celebrated Marshal Turenne [tu-renn].

† This brave and energetic Frenchman accompanied Champlain through nearly all his explorations. He also acted as a scout when the Huron Indians made a raid into the Iroquois country, and performed many perilous feats of daring among them. He was treacherously murdered by the Hurons at one of their villages near Penetanguishene in 1632.

---

QUESTIONS.—Who became patron of Canada? How did Champlain seek to settle the trading disputes? Who stood out? After visiting Hochelaga, what did Champlain do?

of the Hudson Bay, which had only lately (1610) been discovered by Henry Hudson.\* This Champlain had been led to believe he could do, by the mis-statements of



Henry Hudson.

a boasting adventurer, named Vignan, who professed to have explored the route far inland. At length having reached a point beyond the head of a lake (now known as Coulonge), the party stopped to confer with Tessouat, the chieftain of the place. Here, after a feast, Champlain urged the chief to give him canoes and convoy to the territory of the Nipissings, which Vignan had described as being near an ocean at the north.

Tessouat laughed at the credulous Champlain, and insisted upon killing the imposter Vignan for having thus deceived him. He assured Champlain that Vignan had never seen the country of the Nipissings, but had remained there with him until he had returned to Montreal. Tessouat further discouraged Champlain; and he having also learned, from the significant sign-language of the Indians,

---

\* Henry Hudson was an eminent English navigator, but his early history is unknown. He was sent, in 1607, by some London merchants, to discover a north-west passage to China and Japan, but only reached 80° north latitude, and returned. In a second voyage, he went as far as Nova Zembla. In 1609, he was despatched on a third voyage, by the Dutch East India Company (who called him Hendrick Hudson), and discovered the beautiful river Hudson, in the State of New York. In 1610, he undertook a fourth voyage, in a bark named the "Discovery," and in June reached Greenland. Proceeding along the Labrador coast, which he named Nova Britannia, he discovered, in 60° north latitude, a strait leading into a vast bay; (the strait and bay are now named after him). He entered it, and went southwards. Unable to bear the severe climate, he prepared to return; but having threatened his mutinous crew, they entered his cabin at night, pinioned his arms, and put him, with his son John and seven infirm men, on shore in a boat. Hudson and these men were never heard of afterwards. A few of the mutineers reached England, in 1611, after having justly suffered very great hardships.

---

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of Hudson's life. Mention Champlain's adventure at Lake Coulonge.



that the source of the Ottawa lay far to the northwest, despaired to reach it. He then returned down the Ottawa and St. Lawrence to Quebec, and thence to St. Malo in August, 1613.

6. *Reverses—First Missionaries to Canada.*—The Prince de Condé proved to be a mercenary, though from his position, an influential patron and Viceroy. A new and enlarged company was incorporated under his auspices ; and an effort was made to introduce Christianity among the Indians. For this purpose, Champlain brought out with him, in 1615, four Recollet [rec-ko-lay] fathers (Jamay, d'Olbeau, le Caron and du Plessis),\* as missionaries to Canada. The first mass ever celebrated in Canada was performed by Jamay and le Caron, at the River des Prairies, in June, 1615, and by d'Olbeau and du Plessis at Quebec.

7. *Discovery of Lakes Nipissing and Huron.*—Nothing daunted at his previous failure, Champlain determined to renew his explorations. D'Olbeau had gone as a missionary to the Montagnais, near Tadousac, Jamay and du Plessis remained at Quebec, while le Caron started with the Huron Indians in advance of Champlain up the Ottawa. Passing Lake Coulonge, where he had been before in his explorations, Champlain followed up the tributary waters of the Mattawan river to Lake Nip-is-sing, where he stopped two days with the Nipissing or Neb-e-cer-i-ni Indians,—also called Sorciers (Sorcerers), from their ill repute as magicians—thence down a river, since known as French River, into what is now known as Georgian Bay and Lake Huron, but which he called Mer Douce [mare-duce]. Turning southwards he followed the

---

\* The Recollets, a later branch of the Franciscans, founded by St. Francis d'Assisi, were known as Franciscans of the Strict Observance. The name is derived from the practice of strict spiritual recollection which was required of the brethren. They were approved by Clement VII., in 1532.

---

QUESTIONS.—How was Christianity introduced into Canada? Who were the first missionaries? Describe the religious order. What religious event occurred in 1615?



coast of the Georgian Bay until he reached the head of Matchedash Bay. From Penetanguishene he followed an Indian trail far inland through a rich wooded country, to a palisaded village named O-tou-a-cha, one of the principal lodges of the Huron Indians. Here he was well received; but eager to explore further, he visited other villages to the westward. At length he reached Car-ha-gou-ha (with its triple palisade thirty-five feet high), where he met the Recollet father, le Caron, who was rejoiced to see him. Le Caron, on the twenty-sixth of July, signalized the event by celebrating mass, and chanting the *Te Deum* for the first time in these Western wilds. From this spot he turned his steps eastwards and soon reached Ca-hi-a-gu-e (in our modern Orillia), the rendez-vous or chief lodge of the great Huron settlement near Lake Simcoe, which was afterwards known as the French Mission of St. Jean Baptiste.

8. *Great Warlike Expedition against the Iroquois.*—At Cahiaque, there was great feasting and war-dances, and the invincible Champlain promised to join the Hurons in a projected incursion into the far-off Iroquois territory. To make this stealthy blow fall with more unerring and fatal certainty upon the Iroquois, Etienne Brulé, Champlain's interpreter and intrepid companion, volunteered with twelve Hurons to penetrate as a scout to the hostile borders of the foe and visit the Eries, who had promised to send five hundred of their warriors on the Huron war path against their common enemy, the Iroquois. Champlain with his allies, having crossed the Narrows at Lake Cou-chi-ching, coasted down Lake Simcoe, to a little river, now called Talbot, thence across the Portage to Lake Balsam, and down the devious windings of the chain of waters leading to the river Trent. From the mouth of this river the hostile fleet of canoes glided down the Bay of Quinté to the first opening leading into Lac St. Louis,

---

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of the explorations made by Champlain in 1615-16. What is said of the Indians and places which he visited? What occurred near Lake Simcoe?

(known to the Hurons as Lake On-tou-o-ro-nons, or Ontario). Boldly crossing this lake, they reached the opposite shore, and hiding their canoes in the woods, filed warily inland across the Onondaga river towards the castles of the Senecas. At length, about the 10th of October, they reached the foe, who, unaware of danger, were busily engaged in gathering their maize and autumn fruits. Without waiting for their Erie allies, the Hurons tumultuously rushed upon the unconscious Iroquois, who instinctively grasped their tomahawks and rallying to their defences, stood at bay. Ere Champlain could interfere, many of the Hurons lay dead, and even with his powerful aid a panic seized them; and though he rallied them, they again fled. Champlain himself was wounded, and was forced to follow his fugitive allies. But his prestige was gone; and the Hurons gloomily allowed him to accompany them in their retreat across the lake. They then refused to redeem their promise to send an escort with him to Quebec, and virtually kept him a prisoner among them till the following spring. Du-ran-tal, a chief, however, remained friendly, and shared his lodge with him. His energetic nature brooked no restraint, however; and he induced the Hurons to allow him to renew his explorations for a time. He visited le Caron again at Carhagouha; and though it was mid winter they both pushed on westwards to the lodges of the Tobacco Indians and those of the Cheveux Relevés,—an Algonquin tribe to the southwest of Nottawasaga bay. In one of his hunting expeditions with the Hurons, Champlain became separated from them and nearly lost his life in the woods. At length, by the aid of Durantal, and other friendly Indians, who accompanied him, he returned secretly to Sault St. Louis. (Lachine), in July, 1616, and thence to Quebec, whither le Caron had preceded him, and where he found the little colony, which had mourned him as dead, torn by intestine feuds between the merchants,

---

QUESTIONS.—When did Champlain's next contest with the Iroquois take place? How did it end? Give a sketch of the contest and of Brulé's intrepidity. What was the effect of this warlike expedition? What further adventures befell Champlain? How did he escape? Mention the state of the little colony.



the resident families (who were forbidden to traffic with the Indians), and the Rochelle [ro-shell] traders, who defied the authority of the chartered company of merchants.

9. *Champlain's Discouragements and Zeal.*—Owing to the continued contest between the friends and enemies of the Company's monopoly in Canada, Champlain returned to France and sought to reconcile differences, and still to maintain the privileges of the Company. The Prince de Condé [con-day], being involved in political troubles, was imprisoned. He sold his Vice-royalty in Canada to the Duke de Montmorency [mon<sup>s</sup>-moh-rahns<sup>s</sup>-see], who was a friend of Champlain.\* The company of merchants suffered much embarrassment, and were involved in litigation in endeavoring to maintain their exclusive privilege in the peltry-traffic. They strongly censured Champlain for his greater devotion to exploration than to their trade-interests, and therefore sought to supersede him by Dupont Gravé, whose thoughts were more engrossed in the extension of the fur-trade. Warm discussions ensued, and the matter was finally brought before the king's council. A royal decree was, however, passed in 1619, sustaining Champlain. In high hopes he again left for Canada in 1620, accompanied by his youthful wife, who was received with great respect by the Indians at Quebec. When Champlain arrived at Tadousac, he found that some experienced rival traders from Rochelle had, contrary to regulations, imprudently bartered firearms with the Indians for furs. This indiscretion afterwards caused the colony much trouble. In 1620, Champlain laid the foundation of the Castle of St. Louis, Quebec, which continued to be a vice-royal residence until 1834,

---

\* Henry, Duke de Montmorency, and Admiral of France, was born in 1565. He was successful against the Huguenots in 1628; but being an enemy of Cardinal Richelieu, he raised the standard of Rebellion in Languedoc. He was wounded, taken prisoner and executed in 1632.

---

QUESTIONS.—What discouragements did Champlain meet with? How did he overcome them? Who succeeded Condé? How were the trading disputes settled in France? What indiscretion occurred at Tadousac?



when it was accidentally burned. He also framed a brief code of laws for the internal government of the little colony; but he was greatly impeded in his efforts to promote its prosperity, by religious dissensions, trading disputes, and the incursions of the Iroquois. These incursions threatened, in 1622, to lead to serious results. Three hostile bands of Iroquois attacked three of the settlements; but the French, aided by the Hurons, repulsed them. The unprotected Hurons, however, suffered severely from the Iroquois.

10. *Trading Disputes—Distracted state of the Colony.*—Complaints against the Trading Company of St. Malo and Rouen having become so frequent, Montmorency, the viceroy, was induced to confer the powers of the company upon William and Emery de Caen [kah-en], one of whom was sent out to Canada as superintendent. On his arrival at Tadousac, de Caen assumed almost royal authority, and sought even to exercise a surveillance over Champlain. His arbitrary conduct was energetically resisted by Champlain, and by the colonists, who refused to acknowledge the new company's agent, and left for France in large numbers. Champlain sent a Recollet father to lay their grievances before the king. In 1622, he had the satisfaction of seeing a solemn treaty of peace entered into between the hostile tribes of the Huron and Iroquois Indians. In 1624 he and his wife returned to France, where he learned that, by a royal edict, the disputes between the rival trading companies had been settled.

11. *The Company of one Hundred Associates—Seigniorial Tenure introduced.*—The Duke of Ventadour [vahn-ta-dure] (who had succeeded his uncle as viceroy in 1625), having entered one of the orders of monks, devoted most of his attention to the conversion of the Indians. To promote this object, three Jesuit fathers (Lalemant,

---

QUESTIONS.—State what Champlain did on his return to Canada. What further trading disputes occurred? How did Champlain regard de Caen?

Massé and de Brebeuf), were, at the request of the Recollets, sent to Canada in 1625. Thus the order obtained a footing in Canada—fourteen years after two of its members had reached Nova Scotia. De Caen would not receive them, but the Recollets admitted them into the St. Charles convent. De Brebeuf undertook a mission to the Hurons; but the fate of Viel, the Recollet, (who was drowned by the Indians at a place near Montreal, since called *Sault au Recollet*,) deterred him for a time. The Duke's well-meant but exclusive policy did not please Champlain, who returned to Canada in 1626.



Cardinal Richelieu.

His objections were shared in by the Cardinal Richelieu [reesh-elyue], who revoked the charter of the De Caen Company in 1627, and instituted a new one upon a broader basis. This association was clothed with extensive powers, and named "The Company of One Hundred Partners." From it the Huguenots were excluded. It was invested by the king with the vice-royalty of New France and Florida, and with the "attributes of seigniorship and justiceship, with power to assume

for its infeoffed lands such titles, deeds, honors, rights, powers, and faculties as should be judged fitting." Thus, in Canada, the seigniorial tenure, or feudal system, was extended and consolidated. The French monarch also raised twelve of the principal seigneurs to the rank of French *noblesse*. Shortly afterwards King Charles I. established the order of Baronets of Nova Scotia in that country.

12. *First Capture of Quebec*.—Scarcely had the new Company been organized, ere war was declared between

---

QUESTIONS.—What change was made in the trading company? Sketch De Caen's career. What religious order arrived in 1625? How were they received? State what further changes were made. What is said of the creation of the Seigniorial tenure, of the *noblesse* of Canada, and of Nova Scotia Baronets?



France and England. The first ships which the Company sent to Canada were captured; and shortly afterwards Tadousac fell into the hands of the English. The capture was made by Sir David Kertk, a French Huguenot refugee from Dieppe (who had been commissioned by Charles I., in 1628), and Captain Michel, formerly in the service of the De Caens. Kertk sent some Basque prisoners as messengers to Quebec, which was not very strongly fortified, and summoned it to surrender; but Champlain, who sent back a haughty reply, treated them so well, that Kertk withdrew his ships to cruise in the gulf without attacking him. On his way down the river, however, he captured some French transports laden with food and stores, which Roquemont (one of the new company) was bringing to Quebec. Owing to this loss the colony suffered great privation. Next year Kertk again appeared before Quebec, and, after having offered honorable terms to Champlain (who was reduced to great straits), the heroic governor capitulated the city in July, 1629. Kertk, having installed his brother, Louis, as governor of Quebec, went to Tadousac, where Thomas Kertk followed him with Champlain. Here Captain Michel died. Shortly afterwards, Kertk took Champlain to England, where he was released and sent to France. Disasters did not long oppress the infant colony; for, by the treaty of St. Germain-en-Laye, in 1632, Charles I. of England, restored not only Canada, but also Cape Breton and Nova Scotia, to Louis XIII. of France.

13. *Death and Career of Champlain.*—In 1632, Emery de Caen came to Quebec to hoist the French standard once more upon its walls. He was authorized to enjoy the profits of the fur traffic for one year, so as to indemnify him for losses sustained during the war. In 1633, Champlain again returned to Canada as governor. He at once sought to restore prosperity, and to promote civili-

---

QUESTIONS.—What trouble arose? Describe the first capture of Quebec. Under what circumstances was Canada, Cape Breton and Nova Scotia restored to the French?



zation among the Indians, by means of the Jesuit missionaries. In 1634, a new settlement was formed at Three Rivers. In the midst of these signs of returning life and vigor, the young colony was called upon to suffer a signal loss,—the death of her beloved Champlain on Christmas day, 1635, after a checkered yet noble career of heroic endurance in the service of France in Canada, of nearly thirty years. He was a man of unusual energy and decision; but his early zeal against the Iroquois was ill-judged. He wrote three volumes, at intervals, containing an interesting account of his voyages to Canada. He also wrote a history of New France, and a summary of Christian doctrines, which latter was translated into both the Huron and Iroquois languages.

14. *New Viceroy—Montreal Founded*.—De Chateaufort was temporarily appointed to succeed Champlain; but in 1636, he became Governor of Three Rivers, on the arrival from France of De Montmagny [mont-man-yee], the new Viceroy,—who sought to emulate Champlain in his zeal for the colony.\* In 1636, the foundation of the Jesuit College for the Hurons was laid at Quebec. In 1637–42, Noel Brulart de Sillery, a benevolent knight of Malta, founded an institution four miles above Quebec, for the Indian converts. This he named after St. Joseph—who had been selected as the patron saint of Canada in 1624. The year 1638 was noted for several severe shocks of earthquake, which were felt all over the French and English colonies. In 1640, the island of Montreal was ceded by M. de Lauzon [law-zon<sup>s</sup>] for the purposes of settlement, to an association of thirty-five persons.

---

\* Le Chevalier Charles Huault de Montmagny. During his administration, Montreal was founded, and the long threatened war of extermination against the Huron Indians was commenced by the Iroquois. It was to this governor that the Indians first applied the term *Ontio*, or *Nontion*, the *great mountain*,—a literal translation of M. de Montmagny's name. The term was afterwards applied indifferently to each of the French governors of Canada. *O-non-ti-o-go-a* (or *On-ti-o-go-a*) was the Indian name of the king of France.

---

QUESTIONS.—Sketch Champlain's further career and life. Who succeeded him? What is said of M. de Montmagny? What institutions were founded in L. C. during the years 1636 to 1642?

He had, in 1635, obtained it from the Company of One Hundred Partners. M. de Maisonneuve [may-son<sup>g</sup>-nev] was selected to found the settlement, which he did under many discouragements in 1642. He first erected a few buildings, near the site of the Indian village of Hochelaga, and enclosed the whole of them within a wooden palisade, for protection against the Indians.\* On the 18th day of May, 1642, the humble settlement was with religious ceremonies solemnly named Ville Marie, or Ma-ri-an-op-o-lis, by the superior of the Jesuits.†

15. *Concerted Indian Attacks*.—In 1642, the Iroquois were successful in their attacks upon the French; and in the next year, M. d'Ailleboust erected defences around Montreal. In 1644, the Iroquois concerted a bold scheme to destroy the whole line of French posts,—a scheme which, with singular exactness, was again repeated by other Indian tribes, against the English posts, one hundred and twenty years afterwards.‡ In that year (1644), the Iroquois, who were friendly to the Dutch and English, but who were bitterly hostile to the French, and to their allies (the Algonquins and Hurons), formed a plan by which they hoped to exterminate in a single day all the French colonists in Canada. They divided their warriors into two great bands, and these two bands into ten sep-

---

\* Paul Chomedey de Maisonneuve was, in 1642, installed as first governor of Montreal, by M. de Montmagny. Through the intrigues of M. de Mésy, [may-see] he was, in 1645, at his own request, replaced for a time, in the government of Montreal by M. Louis d'Ailleboust de Coulonge [day-see-boo-d'-koo-lawn]. He went to France in 1646, but returned in 1648, when M. d'Ailleboust left for France.

† Montreal was known to the Iroquois by the name of Ti-o-ti-a-ki, as it stood upon the site of an Indian village on the banks of the river which was known to Jacques Cartier as Tu-ton-a-qui. Hochelaga was situated near the side of Mount Royal. This mount was called by the Algonquins Mo-ni-ang, which is very similar to the French pronunciation of *Montreal*.

‡ In 1763, Pon-ti-ac, a celebrated chief of the Ottawa Indians and an ally of the French, matured a bold and comprehensive plan for the destruction of the English by the simultaneous capture of all their forts from Lake Michigan to the Niagara. The plot failed. See No. 63, Chapter V., page 103.

---

QUESTIONS.—Mention the circumstances connected with the foundation of Montreal. What is said of M. de Maisonneuve; and of the year 1644? Give a sketch of the Iroquois scheme for destroying the French line of trading posts in 1644. Had it any after parallel? Mention it. What is said of Pontiac?



arate war-parties. In the ensuing spring these war-parties were, on a given day, simultaneously to attack the French settlements from several ambushed points, which were selected with more than the usual skill and sagacity of the keen-eyed Iroquois. The party of warriors designed to surprise Montreal was fortunately discovered by the garrison and defeated; while other parties, having acted prematurely, were foiled in their attempts. Thus although the project failed for want of unity of action on the part of the Iroquois bands, yet many valuable lives were lost and the very existence of the colony itself was for a time imperilled. In this crisis, Anne of Austria, the Queen Regent of France, and protectress of Canada (on the death of Cardinal Richelieu and Louis XIII., in 1642–3), at once sent out a company of soldiers to aid in the protection of the colony. Fort Richelieu, which had been erected with great difficulty in 1642, by Governor Montmagny, at the mouth of the Iroquois (Richelieu) river to keep these Indians in check, was a principle point of attack; but, although the force within the fort was small, it was successfully defended. At length, in 1645, through the agency of some prisoners, the Governor induced the Iroquois to consent to a peace. A truce followed, to which the Mohawks, Hurons, Algonquins, and French were parties; but the rest of the Iroquois cantons would not concur in it. It was entirely repudiated by them in 1646, at the instigation of some treacherous Hurons. On the frivolous pretext that an epidemic and a failure in the crops (which had lately occurred) were caused by the machinations of Père Jogues,\*

---

\* Isaac Jogues, a native of France, came to Canada in 1636, and labored as a missionary among the Hurons. He was taken prisoner by the Iroquois in 1642, and was shamefully mutilated. Arendt Van Corlear, the humane Dutch Governor of New Netherland, rescued him and other French prisoners. Within a short time he went to France, but soon afterwards returned to Canada. In 1646, when on his way to ratify a treaty with the Iroquois, he gave the name of St. Sacrament to the Lake called afterwards Lake George by Sir Wm. Johnston. On his arrival among the Iroquois, he fell a victim to his zeal, as stated above.

---

QUESTIONS.—What is said of Anne of Austria, and of Fort Richelieu? How was a truce brought about? Upon what pretexts was it broken? Sketch Jogues' life.



—who had been sent to ratify the treaty with the several cantons:—this Jesuit father was barbarously murdered. Ferocious attacks were also made upon other Jesuit missionaries, and several of the settlements, so that war and rapine again desolated the country. Taking advantage, however, of a partial cessation from strife, the Company of One Hundred Partners, which had suffered such terrible losses during the struggle, made an important change in their relations to the colony. The Company conceded to the inhabitants of Quebec, Three Rivers and Montreal the right to trade in peltries, under certain restrictions, and on the early payment to it of one thousand beaver-skins, besides some local expenses of the government. This arrangement was confirmed by royal edict; and the Company consequently renounced all further right to interfere in the internal trading concerns of New France.

16. *Destruction of the Hurons.*—M. de Maisonneuve having declined the office of governor, M. d'Ailleboust succeeded M. Montmagny, as governor in chief, in 1647. The latter had remained in Canada for three years, and had proved himself to be an able man. During his brief administration the Jesuit missionaries so greatly extended their explorations and labors among the Indians in the interior, especially to the north-west, that the religious interest in the colony was greatly increased in France. Irritated at the continued alliance of the Hurons with the French, the Iroquois formed a scheme for their utter extinction. The 4th of July, 1648, was selected as the commencement of this terrible episode in Indian warfare. On that day they fell upon the Huron settlement of St. Joseph, and destroyed the whole population, numbering 700. Every wigwam was burned; and as if to give more malignant vent to their hatred to the religion of the pale faces, they set fire to the church, and then threw the mangled and bleeding body of Père Daniel, the Jesuit missionary,

---

QUESTIONS.—What followed the breaking of the truce? Mention the steps taken by the company to place trade on a firm basis. What is said of M. de Montmagny's government? Why were the Iroquois so hostile to the Hurons?

its pastor, into the midst of the flames. They then suddenly withdrew, leaving the rest of the mission settlements in a state of terror during the remainder of the year. Early in the following March a band of Iroquois swooped down like an eagle upon St. Ignace and St. Louis (two Huron settlements near the great lakes), and put to death four hundred of their inhabitants. At St. Louis the veteran Brebeuf and the gentle Lalemant (who for twenty years had subjected themselves to every kind of hardship as Jesuit missionaries), were put to death with excruciating tortures. Each successive settlement was visited in like manner, and with a like result. Soon, in self-defence, the hunted Hurons stood at bay; and for a time, alternate success and defeat followed each other with fatal rapidity, inflicting on them terrible losses. At length, in a final struggle for their very existence and for the possession of their homes and hunting-grounds, they were defeated by the unsparing Iroquois. Utterly routed, the unhappy Hurons, accompanied by some of their missionaries, fled to the upper lakes, and at length found a resting-place on the island of St. Joseph. Here, during the winter, disease and want of food rapidly reduced their already thinned ranks. Some of them fled to the shores of Lake Superior, and sought the powerful protection of the Ojibways. Here a decisive battle took place on a spot which, from this circumstance, was named Point Iroquois, or "Place of the Iroquois bones;" and for a short time the Hurons were sheltered. Others sought the protection of the Ottawa Indians, but were, even with them, again pursued and dispersed. Many of the survivors were, after the old Roman custom, incorporated into the Iroquois tribes, while others fled to Montreal and Quebec by the circuitous route of Lake Nipissing and the Ottawa, and for years remained encamped within the walls of Quebec, or were elsewhere placed under French protec-

---

QUESTIONS.—Mention the successive attacks of the Iroquois which finally led to the destruction of the Huron Indians. Where was the remainder of the tribe placed?



tion. After the storm had passed over, they were transferred to Ste. Foye; and thence to Lorette, where their descendants now remain.

17. *Proposed Union of the English, French and Dutch Colonies.*—The four New England colonies had, in 1643, formed a union or alliance. It was afterwards proposed that this union should include all the European colonies in America—English, French and Dutch—so as to form one great community, whose existence should not be imperilled by the politics or wars of Europe. Each colony, it was intended, should retain its own laws, customs, religion and language.

18. *Projected Alliance with New England.*—With a view to carry out this scheme of colonial union, Governor John Winthrop of Massachusetts wrote to the governors of New Netherlands and Canada in 1647. The Dutch governor responded favorably at once, but the French governor delayed doing anything until 1650, when he despatched Père Druellètes\* to Boston, to propose as an additional article of union that New England should join Canada in chastising the Iroquois. On his return with a somewhat favorable report, d'Ailleboust, in 1651, despatched Père Druellètes and M. Godefroy, as ambassadors to Boston, to negotiate a treaty. The French, having suffered so severely from the Iroquois in their peltry-traffic, pressed their point, and declined to enter into any treaty unless the English would consent to

---

\* Gabriel Druellètes was born in France in the year 1593. He became a Jesuit father, and was sent to Canada in 1643. He labored chiefly among the Algonquin and Abnakis Indians at Sillery, Tadoussac, Anticosti, Chaudière and Kennebec. In 1650 he was sent alone by the governor as envoy to Boston. On his return, he paid a friendly visit to John Eliot, the famous English apostle to the Indians of New England, at Roxbury. In 1651 he accompanied Sieur Godefroy to the same place to negotiate a treaty with the English colonies. In 1666 he instructed Père Marquette in Montagnais, and accompanied him to the Western lakes. In 1639 he was at Sault Ste. Marie where he labored for many years. At length he returned to Quebec, where he died in 1681, aged 88 years.

---

QUESTIONS.—What notable events took place in the years 1643, 7-8? What was done to bring about a commercial alliance between New England and Canada? Sketch Druellètes' life. What celebrated English Missionary did he visit at Roxbury?



turn their arms against the Iroquois. This hostile stipulation on the part of the French, against the Indian allies of the English, although skilfully presented as a righteous league in defence of Christianity against scoffing Pagans, broke off the negotiations, and the scheme unhappily failed. When this stipulation became known to the Iroquois, it exasperated them still more; and they redoubled their efforts to destroy the French colonists; so that for several years the French, like the ancient rebuilders of Jerusalem, labored with arms in their hands, and were virtually kept within their enclosures and behind their entrenchments. Trade entirely languished; and the beavers were allowed to build their dams in peace, none of the colonists being able or willing to molest them.

19. *A Lull in the Indian Contest.*—M. de Lauzon, a chief member of the Company of One Hundred Associates, succeeded d'Ailleboust as governor in 1651; but he was not successful as an administrator. The Iroquois, having nearly succeeded in extirpating the Huron allies of the French, continued to attack the French settlements; and it was not until 1653 that they ceased their warlike inroads upon the colony. In that year reinforcements arrived from France; and the Iroquois, not wishing to encounter their now formidable enemies, intimated a strong desire for peace. A treaty was accordingly entered into in 1654, with the five Iroquois tribes, or cantons, through the intervention of Père le Moyne, and for a time war ceased to alarm the colonists. Trade soon revived, and the peltry-traffic was vigorously prosecuted by the French with such of the Iroquois cantons as were near the boundaries of Canada. The others, however, preferred to traffic with the English. During the intervals of war, explorations were made among the Sioux [see-on] Indians, beyond Lake Superior, and also among the Esquimaux, near Hudson Bay. The year

---

QUESTIONS.—What additional article did the French insist on? To what state were the French settlements reduced? After Lauzon's appointment how did the Iroquois act? What led to peace?

1656 was noted for an overland expedition which was sent from Canada, by way of Labrador, under Sieur Jean Bourdon [boor-dong,] attorney-general of New France, to take possession of the Hudson Bay territory on behalf of the French King.

20. *French Settlements among the Iroquois.*—In accordance with the charter of the One Hundred Associates, the tributaries of the St. Lawrence were included within the trading territory of that company. Under its authority the French colonists made attempts in 1654–7, through the Jesuit missionaries, to form mission settlements among the Iroquois. With the quasi consent of these Indians, Père le Moyne planted a mission among the Mohawks, Dablon among the Onondagas, Mesnard among the Cayugas, and Chaumonot among the Senecas. The English colonists, however, steadily resisted all these efforts of the Jesuit missionaries to settle among the Iroquois. Dissensions, at length, arose among the Iroquois themselves in regard to these encroachments upon their territory; and they refused to admit the right of either the English or French to claim jurisdiction over it. A collision soon occurred; and three Frenchmen were scalped by the Oneidas. The French retaliated and seized some Iroquois braves. The consequence was that in 1656–7 a fierce and unrelenting Indian war once more desolated the country. D'Argenson [dar-zhon<sup>g</sup>-son<sup>g</sup>], the new Governor, who arrived in 1659, implored the French Government to send immediate succor, else Canada would be forever lost to France. His requests, however, were unheeded; but the Iroquois, having unexpectedly met with a determined resistance from a few French colonists, under Daulac, in a palisaded post at the foot of the Long Sault rapids of the St. Lawrence, soon afterwards desisted from their concerted attacks upon Montreal, Three Rivers, and Quebec. Thus relieved from their fears, religious services were held by the colon-

---

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the exploration to the Hudson Bay. What French Mission settlements were attempted among the Iroquois? What led to war again? Why were the Iroquois induced to desist from their fierce attacks?



ists in all the churches of Quebec; and a solemn *Te Deum* was chanted for their happy deliverance.

21. *Royal Government established.*—In 1659 a royal edict regulating the civil government of the colony was issued. In the same year, Mgr. de Laval arrived in Quebec as Vicar-Apostolic of the See of Rome.\* In 1660 he sent René Mesnard as a missionary to the Hurons on Lake Superior. In the following year this aged priest missed his way in the woods, and was never seen again. His cassock and breviary were, however, afterwards found. M. d'Argenson having solicited his recall, M. d'Avaugour arrived as governor in 1661. Through the efforts of Père le Moyne [leh-mwoyn], he effected, in 1662, another treaty with three cantons of the Iroquois. Fearing its short duration (as two cantons had not concurred in it), he sent M. Boucher [boo-shay], the commandant at Three Rivers, to the king of France with another appeal for aid. The king immediately sent out a regiment under command of Sieur Dumont, who was also, as royal commissioner, directed to report upon the state of the colony. In the meantime d'Avaugour [da-vo-goor] was recalled at the instance of Mgr. de Laval; and M. de Mézy, who had been nominated by that prelate, was sent out as the first royal governor under the new constitution,—d'Avaugour having, in 1663, induced King Louis XIV. to dissolve the Company of One Hundred Associates, in whom, as successors of the Company of Merchants, the government of

---

\* The Right Reverend François de Montmorency Laval was born at Laval, in France, in 1623. In his youth he was known as abbé de Montigny; and in 1659, he came to Canada as Vicar Apostolic, with the title of Bishop of Pétrée; in 1674, he was named first Roman Catholic Bishop of Quebec. He founded and endowed the Quebec Seminary, in 1663 (which in 1852, became, by Royal charter, the Laval University). He also established an industrial school and model farm, at St. Joachim, below Quebec. He made great efforts to prevent drunkenness among the Indians; and, by his influence at courts, had the administration of Government transferred from a viceroy to a superior council, under certain wise restrictions, which he had submitted to Louis XIV. He effected great good in the colony, and died amid many regrets at Quebec, 6th May, 1708, at the venerable age of 85 years.

---

QUESTIONS.—What important event took place in 1659? What is said of Père Mesnard? Give a sketch of Bishop Laval. What steps were taken to prevent war? Mention the changes made in the government in 1663.



the colony had been vested between 1603–1628. Owing to various dissensions which had arisen in New France, Colbert\* [kol-bare], the Minister of Marine, sent out M. Dupont-Gaudais [go-day] further to examine and report upon the state of the colony. His visit had a salutary effect, for it led to several important changes in the administration of public affairs.

22. *Ameliorations in the System of Government—Custom of Paris.*—The resumption of royal authority in Canada was made the occasion of introducing various reforms, based upon the report of M. Dupont-Gaudais. "A Sovereign Council," invested with administrative and judicial functions, somewhat like the "Parliament de Paris," was instituted at Quebec; legal tribunals were established at various places, and municipal Government, in a modified form, introduced. The right of taxation was, however, reserved to the king. The administration of government devolved upon a viceroy (who, as colonial minister, generally resided in France), a governor, and an intendant, or chief, of justice, police and public works. With these modifications, the king, in 1664, transferred the trading interests of Canada to the West India Company, by whom an ordinance was passed introducing into the colony the "law and custom of Paris" (*la coutume* [koo-tume] *de Paris*). With a view to insure harmony in these matters throughout Canada, all other French *coutumes* were declared illegal in it. In the meantime further disputes arose between the governor and the bishop, which ended in De Mésy being recalled from Canada to answer for the arbitrary suspension of his councillors. He died, however, before his sentence of recall and arrest could be executed.

23. *Vigorous Administration and Reform.*—The new

---

\* Jean Baptiste Colbert, born in 1619, was a celebrated minister of finance, marine and the colonies, under Louis XIV. He died in 1683, aged 64 years.

---

QUESTIONS.—How did Colbert endeavor to reconcile differences? What was the result of Dupont Gaudais' mission? Mention the steps taken to restore royal authority in Canada. Describe the Intendant's duties. What *coutume* was introduced?

rulers sent out from France in 1665 were men of ability, as subsequent events proved. M. de Tracy was selected by the king as lieutenant-general,\* M. de Courcelles [kooresel] as governor,† and M. Talon [ta-long] as intendant.‡ On their arrival, with new emigrants and farming materials, the colony revived, and vigor was at once infused into the government. With the Carignan royal regiment,§ (which de Tracy had brought out with him), steps were taken to put a stop to the inroads of the Iroquois. The forts were increased and strengthened, especially on the Richelieu river. Talon, by authority of the king, carried into effect various useful reforms in the system of government, especially in regard to the administration of the finances, the punishment of speculators, and the supervision and reduction of the amount of tithes payable to the clergy. He further sought to encourage both agriculture and manufactures among the people. He also prepared a minute report for Colbert, on the state of affairs in the colony, with a view still further to redress grievances. The suggestions of M. Talon, endorsed as they were by the Sovereign Council, were favorably entertained by Louis XIV.; and the restrictions on trade in Canada, as imposed by the West India Company, were greatly relaxed.

---

\* Alexander de Bonville, Marquis de Tracy, before coming to Canada had already distinguished himself in the taking of Cayenne (French Guiana) from the Dutch, and in the capture of several islands in the West Indies. By his military prowess and promptitude in dealing with the Indians, he compelled the haughty Iroquois to make a satisfactory peace with New France, which lasted for eighteen years.

† Daniel de Rémi, Seigneur Courcelles, was a veteran soldier; but he did not at all times display the same energy as a governor. He showed much sagacity and zeal in his efforts to prevent the peltry traffic of New France from being diverted into the hands of the English traders.

‡ M. Talon's career in Canada was distinguished by many of the highest qualities of a successful governor. He promoted, to the best of his ability, every enterprise which had for its object the advancement of Canada. Louis XIV. conferred upon him the successive titles of Baron d'Orsainville, Baron des Îlets, and Baron d'Ormale.

§ So named from the Prince of Carignano [ka-ree-na-no] a Savoyard in the French service. This regiment gained much distinction as a French auxiliary to the Germans in their wars in Hungary against the Turks.

---

QUESTIONS.—Who were the new rulers sent out? What is said of each one of them? What did these rulers bring? How did Talon seek to improve the system of government? How were the Iroquois dealt with? Give a sketch of Talon's career. What is said of the Carignan regiment?



24. *Expeditions against the Iroquois.*—The reinforcements sent to Canada, and the preparations for war, awed the Iroquois. Three of the weaker cantons, or tribes, sought peace; but the fierce and powerful Mohawks and Oneidas disdained it. Against these two, a formidable expedition, under command of de Tracy, was, in 1666, led by the governor in person far into the interior of the Iroquois country. The effect of this expedition was most salutary. The whole of the cantons sued for peace, and in 1667, through the influence of the agents of the Duke of York and Albany, a satisfactory treaty was entered into with them, which lasted for eighteen years.

25. *Rest, Prosperity and Development.*—War having happily ceased, the whole attention of the government was turned to developing the resources and industry of the country. Expeditions were sent out by Talon in various directions, the mineral wealth of St. Paul's Bay, Three Rivers, and Gaspé was, under the patronage of Colbert, brought to light by geological explorers; fisheries and seal-hunting were prosecuted, and trade in timber and seal-oil commenced. Nor were the more domestic features of industry overlooked. Hemp cultivation, tanning, stave-making, and other branches of domestic manufacture were fostered. Horses were also introduced into the colony in 1665. Ill health, however, no less than differences of opinion with the governor and clergy, induced Talon to retire from the Intendancy in 1668. He was succeeded by de Bouteroue [boo-ter-oo], who sought to conciliate all parties; but having failed to realize the hopes and expectations of Colbert, he was again replaced by Talon, in 1670.

26. *Attempted Diversion of the Fur-Trade.*—The English, having, in 1665, superseded the Dutch in New Amsterdam (afterwards New York), pushed their trade northward through the agency of the Iroquois Indians.

---

QUESTIONS.—What was the effect of the expedition undertaken against the Iroquois? How long did the peace last?



These allies, anxious to profit by the traffic, sought in 1670 to obtain furs and skins for the English from the various tribes up the Ottawa. This region was the chief hunting-ground from which the French obtained their supply of furs. The cutting off of this source of supply, therefore, caused much rivalry and ill-feeling. De Courcelles, the governor, went himself to the Indian country to put a stop to the traffic. His mission had a good effect upon the rival tribes, but ill-health obliged him to return. The small-pox in the meantime attacked the Indians with great severity, and that disease, together with the use of "fire-water," carried off great numbers of them.

27. *Treaties with the Indians.*—While the rival fur-trade was yet in its infancy, Talon, the Intendant, with great sagacity, sought to induce the various Indian tribes at the north and west to acknowledge the sovereignty of Louis XIV., and thus, by anticipation, and with the sanction of the Indians themselves, to settle the question of priority of right to trade with them. With this view, Talon, in 1670, despatched Nicolas Perrot\* [per-ro], an enterprising merchant, to visit the Indians at the head of the great Lakes. Perrot went as far as Lake Michigan, and obtained a promise from the tribes to meet a French envoy at the Sault Ste. Marie (where he erected a cross and *fleur de lis*, in token of French sovereignty) in the Spring of 1671. Talon, moreover, anxious to extend French influence over the whole north-western part of the continent, induced Louis XIV. to offer a reward to any one who would reach the Pacific coast through New France.

---

\* Nicholas Perrot, a French traveller, was sent by M. Talon (Intendant of Canada) in 1670, to induce the north-western Indians to acknowledge the sovereignty of France. An island situated at the western junction of the Ottawa and St. Lawrence is called after him. He left a most interesting manuscript on the customs of the Indians.

---

QUESTIONS.—How did the fur traffic affect the relations of the French and English colonists with the Iroquois? What steps did Talon take to secure the trade and allegiance of the North-western Indians? Give a sketch of Perrot.

In order to secure the trade of the Hudson Bay Indians, Talon also sent an expedition northwards with that object. De Courcelles, too, with a view to establish a depot for French trade on the upper lakes, obtained permission from the Iroquois, in 1672, to erect a trading fort at Cataraqui (Kingston). This was one of his last official acts ; and he soon afterwards left for France,—having been recalled at his own request. In the meantime, the English, anxious to keep pace with France, obtained a footing in the Hudson Bay territories, under the guidance of des Grosellières [day-gro-sel-e-yare], a French pilot, aided by another Franco-Canadian, named Ra-di-son [-son<sup>s</sup>.] An English Company was soon formed to trade for furs in the territories, under the patronage of Prince Rupert. Charles II., king of England, having claimed the Hudson Bay territories, by virtue of Hudson's discoveries in 1610, granted a charter to this Company in 1670, authorizing it to traffic for furs in that region. The French Colonists were jealous of this intrusion, and in 1671 sent another expedition overland to reconnoitre, with a view to the subsequent expulsion of the English from the Bay.



Arms of France.

---

QUESTIONS.—How did he seek to promote the extension of French influence over the continent? What steps did the English take to counteract Talon's efforts? What assistance in the matter was given to the English by two of the French colonists?

## CHAPTER V.

## SKETCH OF FRENCH RULE, SECOND PERIOD: FRONTENAC TO THE CONQUEST, 1672–1759.

## Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Career of Frontenac—Discovery of the Mississippi and Rocky Mountains—Trade Contests—Indian Wars—Settlement of Louisiana and Detroit—Pepperrell—Seven Years' War—Washington—Braddock—Dieskau—Wolfe—Montealm—Conquest of Canada—Conspiracy of Pontiac—English and French Colonial Systems.*

1. *Arrival of the Count de Frontenac.*—In the year 1672, de Courcelles, who had proved a successful governor, retired, and Count de Frontenac, a man of great energy and ability arrived.\* The Count's after-career was still more distinguished than that of any of his predecessors, in everything that concerned the progress and prosperity of Canada.

2. *Frontenac's first Administrative Acts.*—Soon after his arrival, Frontenac formed a high opinion of the capabilities of New France. He entered with spirit into the duties of his office. He assembled the Sovereign Council,

---

\* Louis de Buade, Count de Frontenac, a native of France, and governor of Canada in 1672, was recalled in 1682. In 1672, he built Fort Frontenac (Kingston.) It was rebuilt of stone by La Salle, in 1678. Frontenac was re-appointed governor in 1688, and carried on a vigorous war against the English settlements in New York, and against their Indian allies, the Iroquois. The English retaliated, and the Iroquois made various successful inroads into Canada. In 1690, Frontenac defeated Sir William Phipps and the English fleet, before Quebec. He died greatly regretted in 1698, aged 78 years. Though haughty, he was an able and enterprising man.

---

QUESTIONS.—What are the principal subjects of Chapter V.? Who succeeded de Courcelles? Give a sketch of him. Mention some of Count de Frontenac's first acts.



and afterwards summoned the principal residents of Quebec to confer with him on public affairs. He improved the system of municipal police, and directed that the chief citizens of Quebec should meet twice a year to promote the general interests of the colony. This local assembly of the citizens was deemed an infringement of the king's prerogative, and was not sanctioned.

3. *Guarantees for Civil Liberty.*—In 1674, the king revoked the charter of the West India Company, as it had not fulfilled any of the obligations which it had assumed, and invested Frontenac with full authority as royal governor. In 1677, an imperial ordinance of great importance was passed, regulating the administration of justice in Canada. It was followed by one regarding tithes, and another still more valuable, declaring that none but the highest civil authority should hereafter imprison any of the inhabitants. Thus, at a time when arbitrary rule was in the ascendant, was laid the foundation of some of the civil rights of the people of Lower Canada.

4. *Spirit of Discovery and Adventure.*—Nothing was so remarkable, during the early settlement of Canada, as the spirit of adventure and discovery which was then developed. Zeal for the conversion of the Indians seems to have inspired the Jesuit clergy with an unconquerable devotion to the work of exploration and discovery. Nor were they alone in this respect; for laymen exhibited the same adventurous spirit in encountering peril and hardships; but they did so from different motives. Promotion of trade with the Indians, and the extension of French power over the whole continent were with them the impelling motives. From the first settlement of Quebec, in 1608, until its fall in 1759, this spirit of discovery and dominion was actively fostered by each succeeding governor, until there radiated from that city a series of French settlements which seemed to shadow forth a dim

---

QUESTIONS.—Mention the events which took place in 1674 and 1677? What important ordinances were passed about 1677? Describe the spirit of discovery which was characteristic of the early settlement of Canada.

realization of Coligni's\* [kol-een-ee] gigantic scheme of French colonization from the St. Lawrence to the far west, and from the sources of the Mississippi to the Gulf of Mexico, and even to the shores of South America.

5. *Summary of Discoveries.*—After Champlain, other explorers extended their researches westward during 1639. In 1640, the southern shores of Lake Erie were visited by Pères Chaumonot and de Brébœuf [bre-boohf]. In 1647, Père du Quesne [due-kehn] went up the Saguenay and discovered lake St. John. In 1651, 1661, and 1671, expeditions were sent northwards towards the Hudson Bay, with more or less success. In 1646, Père Druilletes ascended the Chaudière [shode-yare], and descended the Kennebec to the Atlantic. In 1659, the Sioux were visited by adventurous traders; and in 1660 Père Mesnard reached Lake Superior. In 1665 Père Alloüez coasted the same lake and formed a mission at the Bay of Che-goi-me-gon. In 1668, Pères Dablon and Marquette formed a settlement at the Sault Ste. Marie. In 1670 and 1672 Alloüez penetrated with Dablon to the Illinois region, where they first heard of the mysterious Mississippi—the “great father of waters.”

6. *Discovery of the Mississippi.*—In 1671, the famous Père Marquette, [mar-kett] formed a settlement of the Hurons at St. Ignace, near Michilimackinac.† Two years later, Talon, ever anxious to promote comprehensive schemes of exploration and discovery, despatched, ere he

---

\* Gaspard de Coligni, admiral of France, was born in 1516. He projected a comprehensive scheme of French colonization, which, however, was never realized. He fell a victim to the fury of the populace of Paris against the Calvinists or Huguenots, on St. Bartholomew's Day, 1572.

† Père James Marquette, a Jesuit missionary, was born at Picardy, in France. While a missionary at Lapoint, on Lake Superior, he expressed a desire to preach the Gospel to the southern Indians, and was chosen by Joliette to accompany him on his expedition to the Mississippi. He remained in the north-west with the Illinois Indians, and died soon after his return from the exploration, at the early age of thirty-eight years. His narrative of the discovery was afterwards published.

---

QUESTIONS.—What circumstances led to the discovery of the Mississippi River? What is said of Coligni, and of his scheme of colonization? Give a summary of the explorations and discoveries made. Sketch the career of Père Marquette and of Joliette.



left for France, M. Joliette\* [zhoh-ee-yet] with Marquette to obtain a further clue to the great unknown river, and if possible to explore its waters. After many discouragements, they reached Bay de Puans [pu-an], afterwards called Green Bay, on Lake Michigan. Here a party of Mi-a-mis Indians directed their steps to the Fox River; and thence they proceeded, in June, to the Wisconsin River. Sailing down this river in a frail canoe, they at length, after suffering innumerable discouragements and delays, were rewarded for all their toil by a sight of that great and silent river—the object of their search. They proceeded down it for a long distance before meeting with any of the Indians. At length, seeing traces of footsteps, Marquette sought to discover where they led to. Advancing a short distance inland, he came to a village on the banks of a river called Mou-in-gou-ena or Mo-in-go-na, now known as Des Moines. The Indians proved to be Illinois or “men.” Marquette and Joliette pursued their journey past the Ohio—called the Wabash—as far as the mouth of the Arkansas River; and then, fearing capture by the Spaniards, they slowly returned. Marquette remained at the north of Illinois as a missionary among the Miamis Indians. Returning to Michilimackinac, he died shortly afterwards on the shores of Lake Michigan, deeply regretted, and was buried near a river there which now bears his name. In the meantime,

---

\* Louis Joliette was born at Quebec in 1615; pursued his classical studies at the Jesuits' College there, and while preparing for the priesthood in the Seminary, he determined to explore the western parts of New France. He gave up the study of divinity for that of the Indian languages. In 1673, he was chosen by Talon, the intendant, and Frontenac, to explore the Mississippi to its source. He chose Father Marquette to accompany him, and proceeded down the great river as far as the mouth of the Arkansas tributary. When near Montreal, on his return, his canoe upset in the Lachine rapids, and his manuscripts were lost. As a reward for his services, he received a grant of the Island of Anticosti, and was named hydrographer to the king. He died about 1701, on the Island of Anticosti. A county in Lower Canada has been named after him.

---

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the explorations of Joliette and Marquette. Were they successful in their discoveries? What tribe of Indians did they meet with? How far did they pursue their researches? What was the fate of Marquette?



Joliette had hastened to Quebec, by way of what is now the city of Chicago, to announce their great discovery. As a reward for his share in it, and for other explorations, Joliette received a grant of the island of Anticosti in the St. Lawrence, and a seigniory near Montreal.

7. *La Salle's First Expedition to the Mississippi.*—Fired with the news of this notable discovery, Sieur de la Salle, a French knight, then at Quebec, determined to complete the discovery, in the hopes of finding a new route to China.\* After visiting France, he obtained a royal commission to proceed with his exploration. The seigniory of Cataraqui, including fort Frontenac, was conferred upon him, on condition that he would rebuild the fort with stone. The Chevalier de Ton-ti, an Italian, and Père Hen-ne-pin† accompanied him; and together they constructed three vessels. Proceeding up Lake Ontario, they reached Niagara, where la Salle erected a palisade. Here they visited the great Falls, of which Father Hennepin wrote an elaborate description. Above the Falls, la Salle constructed another vessel, named the *Griffon*. In her the party traversed Lake Erie; and on their way to Lake Huron, la Salle named the intermediate lake "Ste. Claire." Having reached the southern part of Lake Michigan, he sent the *Griffon* back to Niagara with a cargo of furs. The vessel, however, was lost on her way down the lake; and la Salle having erected a fort for trading with the

---

\* Robert Cavalier, Sieur de la Salle, was ennobled by Louis XIV. He sought to reach China by way of Canada, and set out on an expedition for that purpose. His design was frustrated by an accident at a place since called Lachine, or China. He explored the Mississippi from its source to its mouth, in 1678-80; spent two years between Frontenac (Kingston) and Lake Erie; and constructed the first vessel on Lake Erie (near Cayuga Creek). He sought to reach the Mississippi by sea, but having failed, he sought to reach it overland. In doing so, he was murdered by his jealous and turbulent followers, who afterwards justly suffered greatly.

† Louis Hennepin, a Recollet, or Franciscan friar and a French missionary, was born in 1640, and emigrated to Canada in 1675. He accompanied la Salle in his exploration of the Mississippi, in 1678, and visited the Falls of Niagara,—of which he wrote an interesting account.

---

QUESTIONS.—What was the reward of Joliette? Who determined to complete their discoveries? Who were his companions and what new route did they hope to discover? Give an account of La Salle's first expedition to the Mississippi. What did he do at Cataraqui and near Niagara Falls?

Miamis, waited in vain for her return. He then turned his steps inland. In December, he reached the head-waters of the Illinois. Proceeding down this river to Laka Pe-o-ri-a, he built fort Cravecœur near it. Having directed de Tonti to take command of fort St. Louis on the Illinois, he determined to return and learn some news of his vessel. He despatched Father Hennepin down the Illinois river to the Mississippi, up which he directed him to proceed and explore the head-waters of that great river. Hennepin only went as far as the great falls on the river, which, in honor of his patron Saint, he named St. Anthony. During la Salle's absence, de Tonti and his Illinois allies were attacked by the Iroquois and compelled to abandon their forts, and retreat.

8. *La Salle's Second Expedition to the Mississippi.*—Having in part retrieved his losses, la Salle set out again for the Mississippi. He reached it in 1681; but as his posts there were deserted, he returned to Green Bay where he found de Tonti. At length, in February, 1682, he set out again and proceeded slowly down the river, stopping at the mouth of each great tributary, and making excursions here and there in the vicinity. At length, on the 5th of April, he reached one of the mouths of the great river; and in honor of the event, he named the surrounding country Louisiana, after Louis XIV, and then took formal possession of it in the name of his sovereign. Thus, after many discouragements, this notable event was accomplished by a French colonist from Quebec.

9. *La Salle's Third Expedition to the Mississippi.*—La Salle soon afterwards retraced his steps; but having numerous envious enemies in France and Canada (among whom was de la Barre, the Governor of New France), he was compelled to return to Quebec, and thence to France to meet his detractors face to face. This he did most successfully; and as a proof of the king's confidence in him,

---

QUESTIONS.—What did la Salle's companions do and what is said of each of them? Give the particulars of la Salle's second expedition to the Mississippi.



he was intrusted with the command of a colonizing expedition which was sent to the Mississippi by sea. This expedition never reached its destination. Differences with Beaujeu, the commander, led to one disaster after another. The mouths of the Mississippi were passed, and the ships reached the coast of Texas. Beaujeu ran one of the ships on the rocks, and then deserted with another. La Salle and his companions were left to their fate. Having erected a Fort, he left some of his companions in charge, and set out in search of the Mississippi. On his way thither his companions mutinied, put him to death, and afterwards quarrelled among themselves. Most of the survivors, in their efforts to return home, perished miserably, as a just retribution for their cruelty and crimes. Thus perished, in 1685, the noble la Salle.

10. *Internal Dissensions in Canada.*—One of the chief difficulties which Frontenac encountered in his administration of the government of Canada, arose from a divided authority. The sovereign council, the governor-in-chief, and the intendant, had each their separate functions, which were sometimes difficult to define, and which often clashed, or were contradictory. Add to this, the governor of Montreal claimed a certain jurisdiction which conflicted with the supreme authority of the Royal Governor. Dissensions between Bishop Laval, Frontenac, and the sovereign council, had long existed in regard to the spirit traffic with the Indians. The bishop protested against its continuance, and sought to have it declared illegal. Interested parties aided by Frontenac, opposed his benevolent purpose. Owing to the influence of the bishop and clergy, two local governors had already been recalled, and Frontenac was threatened with a similar fate. The attempted arrest of Perrot, governor of Montreal, for alleged rapacity and disobedience to the ordinances, brought things to a crisis. Fearful of the consequences of his op-

---

QUESTIONS.—Give the particulars of la Salle's third expedition to the Mississippi. How did this last expedition end? What difficulties in his government had Frontenac to encounter? Mention the disputes which arose between the royal governor and various other persons. What brought these events to a crisis?



position, Perrot came to Quebec to explain; but he was imprisoned by Frontenac, who for this act was in turn denounced by Abbé Fenelon, of the Seminary of Montreal. Frontenac sent both Perrot and the abbé to France for trial. Perrot was pardoned on condition that he would make an apology to Frontenac; but the abbé was forbidden to return to Canada. Disputes, however, in regard to the liquor traffic, were still maintained between bishop Laval, Frontenac, and Duchesneau [doo-shen-o] (who had succeeded Talon as intendant in 1675). Colbert, in order to have the matter finally settled, directed Frontenac to obtain for the king, the opinion of twenty of the principal colonists on the subject in dispute. These opinions were obtained and sent to France, but nothing definite was done in the matter. At length the contentions on this and various other subjects went so far, that Frontenac and Duchesneau were both recalled in 1682.

11. *De la Barre's Arrival—His Failure.*—De la Barre succeeded Frontenac as governor, and des Meules replaced Duchesneau as intendant. On their arrival, a war with the Iroquois seemed imminent; and an intimation to that effect, with a request for troops, was sent to the king. In the meantime, colonel Thomas Dongan\* summoned a council of the Five Nations, in 1784, to meet Lord Howard, governor of Virginia, at Albany, with a view to reconcile disputes. The indecision of de la Barre, however, hastened the very thing which he wished to avert. He set out on a dilatory expedition to Oswego; but after an inglorious treaty with the wily Iroquois at Cataraqui (in which he consented to leave the Miamis allies of the French to their fate), he returned to Quebec. Before

---

\* Thomas Dongan, afterwards Earl of Limerick, was a liberal-minded Roman Catholic. He was governor of New York from 1683 to 1688,—when New York was politically annexed to New England. During his administration, the right of electing members of the House of Assembly was first conferred upon the colonists.

---

QUESTIONS.—How did they end? Who succeeded Frontenac and Duchesneau? How did de la Barre deal with the Iroquois? Give a sketch of Dongan.

things, however, came to a crisis, the treaty was disallowed by the French king, and de la Barre was replaced by M. de Denonville.\*

12. *Early Commercial Contests.*—The new governor arrived at a critical juncture. The unfettered trade enjoyed by the English colonists at New York had fostered individual enterprise so largely, that aided by their Iroquois allies, they had in many places carried on the fur-trade far into the French territory. De Denonville took active steps to protect the trading monopoly of his people, and to check the proposed transference of trade from the St. Lawrence. He remonstrated with Sir Edmund Andros,† governor of New England, and with Col. Thomas Dongan, governor of New York. Dongan maintained the inviolability of the Iroquois territory, as being within English colonial jurisdiction, and would not allow the French Jesuit fathers to settle in it, although directed to do so by his Roman Catholic viceroy, the Duke of York and Albany. In order, therefore, at once to overawe the Iroquois, and to resist the encroachments of the English traders, de Denonville determined to strengthen the line of French forts, and to make active reprisals both upon the English and the Iroquois. In the meantime, de Troyes

---

\* Jacques René de Brisay, Marquis de Denonville, although an excellent man, failed in his appreciation of the gravity of important events. His desultory and ineffective efforts to subdue the Iroquois only increased their hatred to the French, and ultimately led to the fatal massacre at Lachine.

† Sir Edmund Andros was successively governor of New York (1674), New England (1686), and Virginia (1692). He involved himself in various disputes in New England, but was more judicious and moderate in Virginia. Arendt Van Curler or Corlear, a noted Dutch governor (who lost his life in Lake Champlain while on his way to pay a friendly visit to the Marquis de Tracy, Viceroy of Canada, in 1667), was so loved by the Iroquois that in memory of him they called all their subsequent English governors by that name. The name was first applied to Sir Edmund Andros, in 1687: "for yow was pleased to accept the name, of a man that was of good dispositions, and esteemed deare amongst us (to witte), the old Corlear."—*Address of 2,000 Maquaes* (the Dutch name for *Mohawk Sachems*) to Sir Edmund Andros.

---

QUESTIONS.—Who succeeded de la Barre? What was the then state of trade in the French and English colonies? Give a sketch of de Denonville and of Andros. What difference arose between the English and French governors?



and d'Iberville\* were despatched to Hudson Bay to drive the English traders out of that territory. The French succeeded in taking from them three trading-forts, leaving only Fort Bourbon (Nelson River) in their possession.

13. *Failure to restrict the Peltry Traffic to the Region of the St. Lawrence.*—Notwithstanding all the efforts which were made by the French, to restrict the traffic in beaver-skins and peltry within their own territories, and to the St. Lawrence route, they were, in the end, powerless to accomplish it. They at one time interdicted trade with the Anglo-Iroquois ;—then they made them presents ;—again they threatened them—made war upon them—invaded and desolated their villages ;—they made treaties with them, and urged and entreated the Dutch and the English to restrain them, and even sought to make the latter responsible for their acts ;—but all in vain. The tide of affairs rolled slowly in against them. The English, who were always heralded by the Iroquois, advanced northward and westward towards the St. Lawrence and the great lakes ; nevertheless, the French, still gallantly held possession of their old trading-forts. With sagacious foresight, the French had, in addition to the fort at Quebec, erected from time to time palisaded enclosures round their trading posts at Tadousac, at Sorel, and the Falls of Chambly (on the Iroquois, or Richelieu River), at Three Rivers, Montreal, and Cataraqui (Kingston). Subsequently, to counteract the encroachments of the English, they erected palisaded posts at Niagara, Detroit, Sault Ste. Marie, Michil-

---

\* Pierre le Moyne d'Iberville was born at Montreal, and was one of the best naval officers of France, under Louis XIV. He was successful in several encounters with the English in Hudson Bay and at Newfoundland. In 1699, he laid the foundation of a colony at Biloxi, near New Orleans : and having discovered the entrance to the Mississippi, which La Salle had missed, he sailed up that river to a considerable distance. He is considered as the founder of the colony of Louisiana. He died in 1706. His brother, Le Moyne de Bienville, was governor of Louisiana, and founded the city of New Orleans. The county of Iberville, in Lower Canada, has been named after him.

---

QUESTIONS.—How did the French succeed in Hudson Bay ? What trading difficulties did they experience ? Give a sketch of Pierre d'Iberville. Mention the successive steps which were taken by the French and English to protect and extend the peltry traffic.



i-mack-i-nac, and at Toronto. Nor were the English idle, they gradually went up the Hudson river, and erected armed trading-posts at Albany, and at various points along the Mohawk valley; until at length, in 1727, they fearlessly threw up a fort at Oswego, on Lake Ontario, midway between the French trading posts of Frontenac and Niagara.

14. *The Campaign against the Iroquois opened by an act of Treachery.*—In order to please the king, and to give force to his aggressive policy against the Iroquois, the governor made Père Lamberville (missionary among the Onondagas) the unconscious instrument of decoying some of their warriors to Cataraqui, on pretence of conferring with them. On their arrival he seized them and ignominiously sent them to France to work at the galleys. De-Champigny [sham-peen-ye], the Intendant, who had succeeded des Meules, in 1684, also shipped off some victims to Marseilles. The Onondaga tribe was greatly incensed at Lamberville's conduct, and at once sent for him. They acquitted him, however, of the treachery, but sent him out of their country. Meanwhile, the governor advanced against the Senecas by way of O-ron-de-quot (near the mouth of the Genesee river), with a superior force. Having met the Iroquois, he defeated them and burned their village; but instead of following up his victory, he withdrew with part of his force to Niagara, which he garrisoned; the remainder he sent back to headquarters. No sooner had the French governor retired, than the Iroquois reappeared on every side. They suddenly attacked the fort at Niagara, and razed it to the ground. They then menaced the forts at Cataraqui, Chambly and Montreal, and committed many lawless acts of aggression in their fierce and stealthy warfare.

15. *Negotiations and Renewed Wars.*—Negotiations for a peace were at length opened with the Iroquois through

---

QUESTIONS.—With what act of treachery was the war against the Iroquois Indians commenced? What expedition was undertaken by the governor?

Colonel Dongan, the English governor of New York. Dongan stipulated that the captured chiefs should be restored, the new fort at Niagara abandoned, and the spoils of the Senecas restored. These terms were refused, until they were enforced by the presence, at Lake St. Francis, of twelve hundred Iroquois. Under these circumstances, de Denonville had no option but to comply with the demands. Owing, however, to the hatred which the Iroquois felt for the French, the dispute was prolonged. At this juncture, A-da-ri-o, or Kon-di-a-ronk (also known as *Le Rat*), a Huron chief of rare powers, and favorable to the French, took offence at the exclusion of his tribe from the negotiation of a proposed treaty, and by means of a double treachery to the French and Iroquois, suddenly precipitated a renewal of hostilities between them. Anxious, therefore, to assume the offensive at once, a project was submitted to Louis XIV in January, 1689, by De Callières\* [kal-le-yare], the governor of Montreal, boldly to attack the seat of English power at Manhattan (New York), and at Orange (Albany). As war had not yet been declared, the project was not entertained by the king.

16. *The Year of the Massacre*.—War having been declared the next year (1689) between France and England, the contest between the rival colonies, which had become imminent in Canada, at once assumed formidable dimensions. In the following June, the king directed Frontenac to carry de Callières' scheme into effect. While it was under consideration, the ever vigilant Iroquois appeared passive, and were even passive in their demeanor to the French. They had, nevertheless, secretly

---

\* Louis Hector de Callières-Bonnevue, a native of Normandy, was a member of the Montreal Trading Company, and also governor of the city. He projected the conquest of New York, and was, in anticipation of the success of his scheme, named first French governor of that province. He succeeded Frontenac as governor of the colony in 1698, and emulated him in his zeal to promote the best interests of New France.

---

QUESTIONS.—Who involved the two colonies again in war? What did de Denonville propose to do in regard to New York? Did the king agree with him in his project? Give a sketch of de Callières.

acquired information of all the hostile movements of the French. At length, without the slightest premonition, these terrible Iroquois suddenly appeared near Montreal, and in one night of August, 1689, utterly desolated the village of Lachine, and massacred its entire population. They then attacked Montreal, captured the fort and retained possession of the entire island until October. So panic-stricken was de Denonville, the governor, that he gave orders to evacuate and raze Fort Cataragui. For ten weeks the fiery bands of Iroquois passed unrestrained through the land, leaving nothing but death and desolation behind them. At length, satiated with revenge, they suddenly forsook the war-path and retired to their lurking-places.

17. *Return of Frontenac—His energetic War Measures.*—Scarcely had the war-whoop of the retreating Iroquois died away in the French settlements, ere the shouts of welcome to the returning Frontenac sounded far and near along the banks of the lower St. Lawrence. De Denonville had been recalled and Count de Frontenac again became governor of Canada. He brought out with him the captive Iroquois, and during the voyage sought in every way to conciliate them, in which he was partially successful. He, however, arrived at a critical period; for, added to the fierce inroads of the unsparing Iroquois, Louis XIV. had increased the peril of Frontenac by declaring war against Great Britain and her colonies, in order to aid James II., then an exile in France, in recovering his throne from William III., Prince of Orange. Frontenac, in accordance with his instructions from the king, resolved to carry the war into the adjoining English colonies. The Hudson Bay and the outlying New England settlements, were suddenly and successfully attacked. In the meantime Frontenac sent emissaries to meet the Iroquois at Onondaga, with instructions to detach them from the English,

---

QUESTIONS.—What calamity occurred to the French settlements in 1689? Describe the sudden attack of the Iroquois. What was the state of Canada on the return of Frontenac as governor? What act of the king further increased the peril of the colony? What was his object?



—whose weakness he demonstrated by secretly sending a party of French and Hurons from Montreal to Corlear (Sche-nec-ta-dy) [ske-], in the depth of winter of 1689–90. This party burned the town, and massacred nearly all the inhabitants. Another party left Trois Rivières for New England, where they committed great excesses. A third party was despatched from Quebec to Casco Bay. Being reinforced there by Baron de Castine, and by the victorious party from Trois Rivières, they were highly successful in their foray. Nor was the governor unmindful of the French posts on the lakes. Although Fort Cataragui had been blown up and abandoned by order of de Denonville, Durantaye, the commander at Mich-il-i-mack-i-nac, was reinforced; and Perrot being furnished with presents for the Ottawa and other Indians, was directed to detach these tribes from the Iroquois, who were allies of the English. In this he was successful; and the Iroquois had to carry on the contest alone. This they did with vigor; but, so determined a spirit of resistance had Frontenac infused into the people, little harm was done by the Iroquois to the French settlements. In the midst of so much peril, the inhabitants, under the guidance of a master spirit, acquitted themselves nobly; and many were the heroic deeds which they performed.

18. *Second Expedition against Quebec, 1690.*—Frontenac's successes aroused the English colonists to great activity. Massachusetts, being the leading colony, summoned a meeting, or congress, of representatives from the other provinces to meet at New York in May, 1690. At that congress it was agreed that no time should be lost in equipping two expeditions,—one to attack the French settlements by sea and the other by land. Sir William

---

QUESTIONS.—Mention the active steps which he took both against the English and Iroquois and with what result in both cases.

Phipps\* took command of the fleet destined to act by sea against Quebec, and the son of Governor Winthrop of Connecticut, that of the army destined to co-operate by land against Montreal. Winthrop proceeded as far as Lake George, there to await the success of Phipps' fleet against Quebec. Sickness, however, broke out among his troops, and compelled him to return without accomplishing anything. In the meantime, the fleet, having previously captured Port Royal and other places in Acadie (Nova Scotia), appeared before Quebec, and demanded the surrender of the place. Frontenac returned a defiant reply, and soon after opened fire upon the fleet. The shot from the ships fell short, while the superior position of Frontenac enabled him to bear upon them with ease. Phipps soon retired with his disabled ships; but the force which he had sent on shore obstinately maintained the contest, but being overwhelmed, however, they too withdrew, and the walls of the beleaguered town at length resounded with the shouts of victory. Frontenac ordered a *Te Deum* to be sung, and at once penned a glowing despatch to his sovereign, who in consequence caused a medal to be struck, bearing this proud inscription:—"FRANCIA IN NOVO ORBE, VICTRIX; KEBECCA LIBERATA, A.D., MDCXC."—"France, victress in the new world; Quebec free, A.D., 1690." Further to commemorate the event a church, (which is still standing in the Lower Town,) was erected in Quebec and dedicated to Our Lady, and named *Notre Dame de la Victoire*!

19. *Expedition against Montreal, 1691.*—Frontenac's

---

\*Sir William Phipps was born of humble parents at Pem-a-quid (Bristol), in the present State of Maine, in 1651. Being a sailor, he was so fortunate as to find large treasure in a Spanish wreck off the coast of Hispaniola. This gave him wealth and influence. He was knighted by James I., and in 1669 was sent to take Quebec. In 1692, he was appointed governor of Massachusetts, and greatly exerted himself to promote its prosperity. He died in 1695, aged forty-four years.

---

QUESTIONS.—Mention the expeditions which were sent from New England against Canada. Who commanded them? How did they succeed? Describe the second attack on Quebec. Give a sketch of Sir Wm. Phipps. How did the contest end, and how was the victory celebrated?



victory had the effect of checking the inroads of the Iroquois. They were not, at present, disposed to renew the contest, as a coolness had arisen between them and the English. The fickle Mohawks carried their jealousy of the English so far as to send warriors to Montreal to enter into a treaty of neutrality in any future contest between the French and English colonies. M. de Callières, the governor of Montreal, affected indifference to their offer, and the Indians withdrew, soon to return and avenge the slight. In the meantime, Colonel Slough-ter, the English governor, held a council with the remaining four cantons of the Iroquois. He so far succeeded in renewing and "brightening the covenant chain" with them, that the design of the Mohawks would have been frustrated had they persisted in it. In the same year, Major Schuyler, \* who was sent by the English colonists of New York, made a bold irruption into Canada through Lake Champlain, and with his Indians defeated de Callières; while the Iroquois, by their stealthy warfare under their Onondaga chief, Black Kettle, continued to keep the French settlements in constant alarm. Port Royal was, however, recaptured by the French in November, 1691; and in the following January, a New England settlement was surprised and put to the sword.

20. *Defences—Partial Cessation of War.*—The ever-vigilant Frontenac, fearing another attack on Quebec and Montreal, strengthened the defences of both towns in 1693. He also attacked the Iroquois "castles," but was compelled by "Quider" to retreat. He again renewed the attempt in 1694. Taking advantage of these successive inroads upon the Iroquois, and their recurring jealousy of the English, he soon afterwards rebuilt Fort Cataraqui

---

\* Major Peter Schuyler was a great favorite with the Iroquois. He was called "Quider" by them, that being the nearest approach to the name of "Peter" which their language would allow.

---

QUESTIONS.—What was the effect of this victory? How did the English counteract it? What other attacks were made? Who was Major Schuyler? How did Frontenac provide for the successful defence of Canada?



against their wishes, and named it Frontenac (now Kingston). By his skill and courage he compelled the Iroquois to desist from their attacks, and soon had the satisfaction of seeing comparative peace restored to the French settlements. The inhabitants were thus enabled once more to resume the cultivation of their lands. In the Hudson Bay the French were also successful. In 1694, D'Iberville took from the English the fourth and only remaining trading-post (Bourbon, on the Nelson River) in their possession.

21. *Successful invasion of the Iroquois Cantons.*—Frontenac, anxious to put a final stop to the harassing and destructive warfare which had been so constantly waged against him by the unrelenting Iroquois, determined to humble these haughty Indians by invading their territory. He therefore collected a force of 2,300 colonists and friendly Indians at Fort Frontenac, in 1696. With this force he marched into the Iroquois territory by way of Oswego. The expedition was partially successful; but the villages in two cantons were desolated by the Onondaga Indians themselves, rather than allow them to fall into Frontenac's hands. Only one very old chief remained, and he was tortured to death at Selina. Before Frontenac's object was fully accomplished, he returned to Canada; but his raid so excited the fierce enmity of the Iroquois that they again ravished his territory with fire and tomahawk, and caused a famine in Canada. In return, Frontenac's Indian allies harassed the English settlements even far into the interior.

22. *The Cause of these Incessant Wars* must be looked for in the determination of both the French and English colonists to secure an exclusive right to carry on a traffic for furs with the various Indian tribes. These trading contests were of long standing, and seemed to increase in bitterness every year. Each party invoked the aid of

---

QUESTIONS.—What occurred at Hudson Bay? What further steps did Frontenac take against the Iroquois Indians? What success did he meet with? How did his expedition against the Iroquois end? Mention the causes of these incessant wars.

the savages, who were themselves not indisposed to enter into the contest on their own account, in order that they might thereby obtain the more favor in trade from the successful rival. Territorial extension, no less than embittered national resentment between the French and English colonists, gave an intensity of feeling to the contest, and contributed to its duration. It is a striking fact, moreover, which the government of New France either ignored, or never fully realized, that the chief part of the misunderstandings, difficulties, and contests connected with the peltry-traffic, had their origin mainly in the persistent efforts on the part of that government to impose upon that traffic unreasonable restraints, and to force it into unnatural channels. In their efforts to do this, their plans were not only counteracted by the energy of the English traders; but they were even thwarted in them by three separate classes among themselves,—each having different interests to serve, yet all united in their secret opposition to the government.

23. *The Three Classes of French Fur Traders* were: 1, the Indians; 2, the trading officials; and 3, the *coureurs de bois* [koo-reur-du-bwa] ("runners of the wood," or white trappers). As to the first class (the Indians of these vast territories), they were ever proud of their unfettered forest life, and naturally disdained to be bound by the artificial trammels of the white man in the exchange of skins for blankets, and for the weapons of the chase. The second class (the officials of New France) was secretly in league with the *coureurs de bois* against the king's revenue agents—their exactions and their exclusive privileges. The third or intermediary class of traders, or factors (the *coureurs de bois*), sought in every way in their power to evade the jurisdiction of the farmers of the revenue at Québec. Their own reckless and daring mode of life among the Indians in the woods, far from the seat of official influence

---

QUESTIONS.—What was the policy of each colony? What three classes of traders are mentioned? Describe them.

and power, gave them peculiar facilities for doing so. Of these facilities they were not slow to avail themselves,—especially as they were secretly under the protection, and, even, patronage of one or other of the French colonial governors or judges. These *coureurs de bois*, through whom the traders obtained furs, were a numerous class; there was not (says the Intendant Duchesneau, in his memoir to the king, in 1681,) a family in Canada of any condition and quality which had not children, brothers, uncles, or nephews among them.

24. *The Treaty of Ryswick*, in 1697, at length brought King William's war to a close, and restored peace to the rival colonies. France agreed to give up whatever places she had taken during the war; and commissioners were appointed to fix the boundaries of the French and English possessions in the New World. No mention of the Iroquois was made in the treaty. The French governor, however, still sought through the Jesuit fathers to detach the Iroquois from the English, but the English prompted the Indians to prevent the settlement of priests among them. In 1700, a law was passed by the Colonial Assembly, punishing by death every priest who might come to settle in the colony.

25. *Death and Character of Frontenac*.—The return of peace was signalized by a sad loss to the French colonists, in the death of the great and good Count de Frontenac. He died at Quebec, in November, 1698, aged seventy-seven years. Like Champlain, he had devoted all his energies to promote the prosperity of Canada. By his bravery and sagacity he successfully defended her alike from the inroads of the Iroquois and the intrusive designs of his Anglo-American neighbors. Though quick-tempered and haughty, he was brave and fearless. He was much beloved by his fellow-colonists, and died amid their heartfelt regrets. He was succeeded by M. de Callières, who was then governor of Montreal.

---

QUESTIONS.—Describe the *coureurs de bois*. What was agreed to by France and England in the treaty of Ryswick? How was the case of the Iroquois Indians dealt with? Give a sketch of the career of Frontenac? Who succeeded Frontenac?



26. *Settlement of Louisiana by D'Iberville, 1699.*—After the death of La Salle, and the dispersion of his followers, no steps were taken to colonize the Mississippi valley until 1698. In that year D'Iberville, a native of Montreal, and a successful officer in the contests with the British in the Hudson Bay territory, left France and arrived in Florida early in 1699. Touching at Pensacola, he entered the Mississippi; and having partly explored it, he returned and erected a fort at Biloxi,—about ninety miles north-east of New Orleans. In the following year he brought with him a number of Canadians; and in 1701 he erected another fort at Mobile, whither he removed his colony. During his lifetime the colony prospered.

27. *Settlement of Detroit by De la Motte Cadillac, 1701.*—To promote the extension of French power and influence among the western Indians, and to secure the trade with them, de Callières sent, in 1701, De la Motte Cadillac, governor of Michilimackinac, with an hundred men and a Jesuit missionary to found a colony at Detroit, or the "strait" between Lakes Erie and Huron. The site was well chosen; and the settlement has more than realized the expectations of its founder.

28. *War Renewed—Unsuccessful Expeditions.*—In 1702, France and England were again at war; but the Iroquois, by a treaty with the French governor, agreed to remain neutral in the contest. In 1703, De Callières died. He was succeeded by the Marquis de Vaudreuil [voh-drah-ye] as governor.\* Successive contests with the Miamis

---

\* Philip de Rigaud, Marquis de Vaudreuil, one of the most successful governors of Canada, first achieved distinction in the Army. He was sent to Canada as commander-in-chief, and aided in the relief of Montreal, after the massacre at Lachine. He aided Frontenac in the defence of Quebec against Sir William Phipps, and in his wars with the Iroquois. He was appointed governor of Montreal, and afterwards succeeded De Callières as governor of New France. During his administration he accomplished many useful reforms. He died at Quebec in 1725.

---

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the first settlement of Louisiana and of Detroit. Who settled these places? Sketch the career of D'Iberville. What events occurred in 1702 and 1703? Who succeeded De Callières? What is said of Marquis de Vaudreuil?

and other western Indians, and against the colonists of New England, took place soon after his appointment. The surprise and massacre of the settlers at Deerfield, Massachusetts, in 1704, and at Haverhill in 1708, must ever reflect disgrace upon Hertel de Rouville, the leader of the enterprise. These attacks upon New England, by the French, led to unsuccessful reprisals against Acadie and the French settlements in Newfoundland. Defeat, however, roused the British colonists to renewed exertions. They formed a plan to take Quebec and Montreal, and collected a large force under Col. Nicholson at Lake Champlain, as a rendezvous. Col. Schuyler induced the Five Nations to engage heartily in this contest. To bear the expenses of this expedition, the colonies issued the first paper-money ever used in America. Having waited in vain for promised reinforcements from England, the colonists abandoned the expedition, for a time.

29. *Further Failures.*—The failure of the expedition greatly disappointed the Iroquois. Col. Schuyler, however, to revive their confidence projected an Indian embassy to England to solicit further aid. He accompanied the embassy, and was highly successful in his mission, beside gratifying the Iroquois chiefs and interesting the English public with a novel sight.

30. *The Treaty of Utrecht—The Six Nations—Louisbourg.*—Although discouraged, the colonists, still intent upon their scheme of conquest, changed the theatre of war to Acadie. That part of New France they took in 1710. In 1711, 5000 troops, detached from the victorious army of the Duke of Marlborough, having arrived from England, the expedition against Canada was revived with great vigor. A formidable naval force was despatched from Boston to Quebec, under Admiral Sir Hovenden Walker; while a large land force rendezvoused at Lake George. Owing to fogs and storms, the fleet failed to

---

QUESTIONS.—Mention the wars which followed De Vandrenil's appointment. What plan of retaliation was adopted by the New England colonists? How were the colonists aided from England? Mention the expedition which they undertook.

reach Quebec; half of it being wrecked; and the land force remained inactive. For the present the scheme failed, and the army was shortly afterwards distributed along the frontier, for its defence. At length the treaty of Utrecht [u-trek], in 1713, put an end to Queen Anne's war, and confirmed to Great Britain, Acadie, Newfoundland, and the Hudson Bay territory; besides finally conceding to the English their claims to a protectorate over the Iroquois and their territory. The Five Nations, thus relieved from the necessity of further contests with the French, turned their attention to their enemies in the south. Claiming affinity with the Tuscaroras in Carolina, they incorporated them into their confederacy, and it thus became what was afterwards known as the SIX NATIONS. To provide for the maritime defence of Canada (which, as yet, had no protection to the seaward), France lost no time in colonizing the island of Cape Breton. Louisbourg, its capital, was founded in 1713, and, in 1720, was strongly fortified at great expense.

31. *Peace and Prosperity in Canada.*—The return of peace to Canada brought with it also a return of prosperity. M. de Vaudreuil set himself to develop the resources of the country, and to foster education among the people. He subdivided the three governments of Quebec, Three Rivers, and Montreal into eighty-two parishes, and took a census of the people. He also extended the fortifications of Quebec, and directed that Montreal should be put in a state of defence. Thus he employed himself until his death, which took place in 1725. In 1720–1, Charlevoix, a distinguished traveller, visited Canada, and afterwards wrote an account of his travels in New France.

32. *Further Trading Disputes.*—Baron de Longueuil [lohng-gay-ee] administered the government for a year, when the Marquis de Beauharnois [bo-har-nwah] succeed-

---

QUESTIONS. What treaty was made? How did the Iroquois act? Give a sketch of De Vaudreuil's administration and career. What did Charlevoix do?



ed de Vaudreuil as governor, in 1726.\* By order of the king, and with a view still further to counteract the efforts of the British traders, De Beauharnois strengthened the forts at Frontenac and Niagara. Governor Burnet of New York (son of Bishop Burnet of England) resolved, in 1727, to neutralize the design of the Marquis by erecting another fort, midway between Frontenac and Niagara, at Oswego. He also had an act passed by the Assembly of New York, subjecting any French trader to heavy loss who would supply the Iroquois with goods. As an act of retaliation the few English residents at Montreal were peremptorily exiled; and contrary to existing treaties the new French fort of St. Frederic was erected at Crown Point on Lake Champlain, and a settlement formed there. With a view to punish the predatory acts of the western Indians, M. De Beauharnois, in 1728, despatched a large force to Chicago, by way of the river Ottawa, Lake Nipissing, and the French River. The expedition was highly successful, and penetrated within a comparatively short distance of the upper Mississippi. Efforts were also more or less successfully made by French agents to detach the Iroquois from the English. As their territory lay between the English and French colonies, and formed a barrier between them, the Iroquois could act against either. It was, therefore, important for both colonies to secure either their co-operation, or their neutrality.

33. *The Champlain Valley.*—This beautiful valley, which had acquired unusual prominence in the intercolonial contests which began in 1730, and ended in 1760, was first discovered by Champlain in 1609. It lies between the States of New York and Vermont, and stretches about 150

---

\* Charles, Marquis de Beauharnois, succeeded De Champigny as Intendant in 1702. In 1705 he returned to France, and in 1726 was appointed Viceroy of Canada. In the twenty-one years during which he administered the government of New France, he displayed much enterprise and ability. He made the most of the means at his command to protect the colony from the intrusion of the English.

---

QUESTIONS. Mention the further trading disputes which arose and how each party sought to meet them. What expeditions were on foot? What is said of the Marquis de Beauharnois?

miles southwards (from the River Richelieu in Canada), and includes the waters of Lakes Champlain and George. In the early French and Indian wars, its long line of water communication from New France far into the interior of the Iroquois territory made it a favorite route for armed predatory bands with their fleets of swift and light canoes. From this circumstance they called Lake Champlain Ca-ni-a-de-re Gu-a-ran-te, or the “lake gate of the country.” The Indian name for Lake George was Andi-a-to-roç-te—“there the lake [i. e., the whole lake valley] shuts [or ends] itself.” It received its present name (George) in 1755 from Sir William Johnson, “not only in honor of his majesty king George,” but to assert “his undoubted dominion here.” The French Missionary, Père Jogues, while on his way to ratify a treaty with the Iroquois, in 1646, had named it St. Sacrement—having arrived there on the anniversary of that festival. Mr. J. Fennimore Cooper, the American writer, gave it the poetical name of Lake Hor-i-con.

34. *Discovery of the Rocky Mountains.*—In 1731, Sieur De la Vérendrye [vay-ronç-dree], a native of Canada, and a son of M. De Varennes,\* sought to give effect to a scheme for reaching the Pacific ocean overland. He set out by way of Lake Superior, and with his brother and sons occupied twelve years in exploring the country lying between that lake and the Saskatchewan, the upper Missouri and the Yellowstone rivers. His son and brother reached the Rocky Mountains in 1743.

35. *Pepperrell's Expedition from New England.*—The notes of war between England and France, which had ceased at the peace of Utrecht, were again sounded in 1745. From Crown Point the French and their Indian allies successfully attacked the English settlements; and

---

\* He took the name of De la Vérendrye from his maternal grandfather.

---

QUESTIONS. Give a sketch of the Champlain Valley. Mention its length and the names of the lakes in it. By what English, French, and Indian names were they known? For what were the lakes chiefly noted? Give an account of the discovery of the Rocky Mountains.



from Louisbourg, the fortified capital of Cape Breton, a host of French privateers sallied forth to prey upon the fishing boats of Nova Scotia and the commerce of New England. Governor Shirley, of Massachusetts, aided by the other colonies, at once organized an expedition under William Pepperrell for the reduction of this stronghold.\* The expedition was highly successful, and Pepperrell was rewarded with a baronetcy. *Nothing daunted*, a fleet, under the Duke D'Anville, was despatched from France to recapture Louisbourg. But having been dispersed by successive tempests, it never reached its destination, much to the joy of the English colonists, who duly acknowledged this interposition, which they regarded as providential by public thanksgiving in their churches.

36. *Border Conflicts with the Indians.*—As a set off to this disaster, however, the French colonists (being unopposed by the Iroquois, who were lukewarm towards the English), made several successful inroads along the frontier line of Canada from Boston to Albany, and greatly harassed the English settlements. The heroic defence by Sergeant Hawks, of one of the English posts against an attack from Crown Point by De Vaudreuil, called forth the admiration of both sides; while the barbarous treatment of the Keith family by the St. Francis Indians, at Hoosac, near Albany, caused a feeling of the deepest resentment. The colonists were roused; and each one vied with the other in setting on foot an expedition for the conquest of Canada. Troops were promised from England, but as they never came, the expedition had to be abandoned. At length the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle, in 1748, put an end to these desultory contests; and both countries restored the respective territories which had been taken by them during the war.

---

\* Sir William Pepperrell was a native of New England, and a brave energetic officer in the later contests between the French and English colonists. For his success and gallantry King George made him a Baronet.

---

QUESTIONS.—What led to Sir William Pepperrell's expedition? How did it succeed? What did the French do? What is said of Sir William Pepperrell? What concessions were made by the treaty?



37. *Disputes about Acadie and Ohio arising out of the Treaty.*—The restoration of Cape Breton to the French gave great offence to New England; but, in 1749, the British parliament repaid the colonies the cost of their expedition against Louisbourg. Disputes, however, soon arose as to the exact boundaries of New France and New England. The British colonists claimed that the Acadian territory extended to the banks of the St. Lawrence, while the French maintained that it reached no further than the Bay of Fundy and the Isthmus which separates that bay from the Gulf of St. Lawrence. M. Galissonnière\* [gal-ese-sonn-e-yare], the acting governor of New France, sought to interpose a living barrier to these encroachments, by inducing the Acadians to emigrate, *en masse*, from the south to the north side of the Bay of Fundy. In this he was partially successful. Galissonnière also took steps to prevent the British fur traders from intruding up the valley of the Ohio River, between Canada and Louisiana, which the French claimed on the ground of occupancy, and of the discoveries of La Salle and Marquette. The British rested their claim upon the ownership of the valley by the Six Nation Indians, who had formerly placed all their territory under the protection of the English in 1684. This claim the Indians acknowledged in 1744. In 1648 the Ohio trading company was formed. The French governor protested against the formation of this company, and in the same year he sent M. Céloron de Bienville to expel the British traders from the Ohio Valley, and to take formal possession of it. This latter he did by depositing at the mouth of every large

---

\* Roland Michel Barrin, Count De la Galissonnière, was born in France in 1693. Though small and deformed, he was noted as a statesman and a scholar, as well as a distinguished officer of the French naval service. He showed great energy and ability during the two years he administered the government of New France, while M. De la Jonquière, the governor, was a prisoner in England. His name was associated with the unfortunate Admiral Byng of England. He died in 1756, aged 63 years.

---

QUESTIONS.—Why was the treaty unsatisfactory? What aggressive steps were taken in Acadie, and in other places, to settle the dispute? Give a sketch of de la Galissonnière. On what did the two nations base their claims to the disputed territory?

stream a plate of lead, on which was engraved the French arms and an inscription. The governor further erected or strengthened a chain of forts extending from the Ohio to Montreal, including Detroit, Des Puans (Green Bay), Niagara, Fort Rouillé [roo-eel-lay] (Toronto), after the French colonial Minister, and la Présentation (Ogdensburgh.)

38. *Efforts to detach the Iroquois from the English.*—At la Présentation, (the fort of which was destroyed by General Gage in 1757), Abbé Picquet\* had established a mission school, so as to conciliate the Iroquois, and to detach them from the English. This was often a successful and favorite policy with the French governors. In 1751 they even prevailed upon the Onondagas to permit them to establish a similar school at Onondaga lake, in the heart of the Iroquois confederacy. Sir Wm. Johnson hearing of it, promptly repaired to the place, and, before the project could be carried out, purchased the lake and a margin of two miles round it for \$1,750! M. de la Jonquière,† [zhon-ke-yare] the new French governor, followed the schemes of La Galissonnière with spirit. In obtaining permission to erect a fort at Niagara he ingeniously availed himself of an Iroquois custom. When a youth, the Senecas had made him a prisoner, and afterwards adopted him into their tribe. By virtue of this adoption, he claimed the right to erect within their territory “a cabanne for his retirement.” This right having been conceded, he chose Niagara, and erected a “caban-

---

\* Francis Picquet was not only a zealous missionary, but a brave soldier. He sometimes accompanied the French Indians in their raids upon the English settlements. By the French he was known as the “Apostle of the Iroquois” and by the English as the “Jesuit of the West.”

† Jacques Pierre de Taffanel, Marquis de la Jonquière, a native of Languedoc, was a distinguished naval officer. He was appointed to the government of New France in 1747, but, being a prisoner in England, did not arrive in Canada until 1749. Though an able governor, his avarice in the peltry trade involved him in a succession of disputes with the colonists.

---

QUESTIONS.—What forts were erected or strengthened? What of La Présentation and Onondaga Lake? Sketch Picquet and de la Jonquière. By what means did de la Jonquière erect the Fort at Niagara?

ne" there, which he fortified—ignoring, in his status as a Seneca brave, the jurisdiction of the English over the Niagara country. In the meantime a joint commission was appointed in Europe to settle the boundaries of New France, and the colonists were requested to remain neutral in any disputes which might arise until this question was settled.

39. *Commencement of the Seven Years' War—Washington.*—While the boundary commissioners in Europe were for five years examining old maps and records, and languidly listening to the arguments of contending parties for and against the claims for the disputed territory, the rival colonists were themselves actually settling the question by the strong hand of force, and by unceasing encroachments on each other. In these disputes exception was taken by the French governor, as previously intimated, to the passes granted by the authorities of Pennsylvania and Maryland to fur-traders in the disputed territory of the Ohio valley. In 1752, three British traders were made prisoners there by De la Jonquière's authority and sent to Presqu'isle (Erie), on Lake Erie, where the French had a new fort. Appeal was at once made to Dinwiddie, the governor of Virginia, for protection. Dinwiddie, by advice of his Assembly, sent George Washington to remonstrate with the French commandant, but without effect. In retaliation, three French traders were seized and sent south of the Alleghany mountains. These acts of personal hostility to the traders of either nation by the colonial authorities precipitated a war which had long been threatened, and which was ultimately destined to be a decisive one.

40. *The First Memorable Blow Struck.*—De la Jonquière, who was about to retire, died at Quebec in 1752, and was succeeded, *ad interim*, by the Baron de Lon-

---

QUESTIONS.—Mention the first hostile acts in the Ohio valley, which led to the seven years' war. How were they met by the governor of Virginia? What changes took place?



gueuil. Marquis du Quesne\* [due-kehr], the new governor, immediately reorganized the militia; but he was opposed by M. Bigot,† the royal intendant, who intrigued against him. Meanwhile, the French troops were sent forward to the Ohio. Their arrival was anticipated by Dinwiddie, the governor of Virginia,‡ who despatched some militia to erect a fort at the junction of the Ohio and Monongahela rivers. They had, however, scarcely traced the outline of the fort, when the French, under M. de Contre-cœur [kon-tre-keur] suddenly attacked and dispersed them.



\* Fort du Quesne.

He at once proceeded to complete the fort which the English had just begun, and named it Du Quesne, after the French governor. Washington, who had charge of a detachment of the Virginia militia, halted at a place called Great Meadows, and guided by the Indians, suddenly attacked a portion of French troops which were near him under De Jumonville, and defeated them. In the meantime the remainder of the Virginia militia came up, but Colonel Fry, their leader, having in the meantime died suddenly, the command of the united forces devolved upon the af-

\* Marquis du Quesne de Menneville held office for only three years; but during that time he effected many military reforms in the colony. Not relishing the prospect of the coming colonial contests, he sought active duty in the French marine service.

† François Bigot was a native of the province of Guienne, in France. He formerly held the appointment of intendant of Louisiana, before being removed to fill that office for the last time in Canada. He was remarkable for the rapacity, malversation, and fraud which characterized his whole official career in Canada, as well as for the gambling, riot, and luxury of his private life. On his return to France he was sent to the Bastille, and afterwards exiled to Bordeaux. His property (and that of his abettors in robbery and crime in Canada) was confiscated.

‡ Robert Dinwiddie was born in Scotland in 1690. For his zeal in discovering a fraud while in the office of a collector of Customs in the West Indies, he was appointed governor of Virginia, which office he held from 1752 to 1758. He died in 1770, aged 80 years.

QUESTIONS.—How did the belligerents act? What is said of the Marquis du Quesne, Intendant Bigot, and Governor Dinwiddie? Where did the first contest take place? How did it end?

terwards famous George Washington,\* who was the next senior officer.

41. *Defeat of Washington's Force by the French.*—Washington's first act, after this skirmish, was the erection of a Fort at Great Meadows, on the Monongahela River, which he appropriately named Fort Necessity. Here he was attacked, and after ten hours' fighting, was obliged to capitulate. Thus on the 4th of July, Washington's first military campaign ended in defeat.

42. *Project of a Federal Union of the Colonies, 1753-54.*—It having been deemed advisable that the several British colonies in America should act in concert against the French, the lords of trade suggested to them to form a conciliatory league with the Indians, which in its structure should be somewhat like the Iroquois confederacy. The indefatigable governor Shirley, of Massachusetts, conceived the bolder project of an alliance among the colonies themselves for the purposes of mutual defence. This proposed alliance did not then take place, but it subsequently developed itself into the memorable union of the colonies against British authority itself, and was afterwards known as the Federation of the United States of America.

43. *General Braddock's Career.*—In this crisis England liberally aided her colonies with men and money. She also sent out General Braddock† to prosecute the cam-

---

\* George Washington was born in Virginia, in 1732. When but sixteen years of age, he was employed in surveying land which had been assigned to Lord Fairfax, a connexion of his. He was a surveyor for many years, and thus gained a knowledge of the topography of the country, which he afterwards turned to military account. Before he was twenty, he was appointed adjutant-general of the militia in a Virginian district, and afterwards rose to a higher rank as a British officer in the seven years' war with the French. His after-career as a successful general in the service of the American insurgents during the revolutionary war of 1775-83, is well known. He died in 1799, aged 67 years.

† Gen. Edward Braddock was an Irish officer of distinction. He was too regardless of the advice of the provincial officers in his ill-fated expedition, and lost his life by the hand of one of the militiamen whose brother he had struck down with his sword for fighting behind a tree, like an Indian or backwoodsman, which Braddock regarded as cowardly.

---

QUESTIONS.—Who became leader of the militia? What is said of Washington, and of the failure of his first military effort? Sketch his career. Mention the project of the federal union of the thirteen colonies in 1753-54. Who was sent out from England?



paign. Active measures were at once taken to capture the entire line of French forts from the Ohio river to the St. Lawrence ; while equally energetic efforts were made by the French to resist this combined attack. In the meantime, Governor du Quesne was succeeded by the Marquis de Vaudreuil Cavagnal [vo-dray-ye cav-ā-nal,] who was destined to be the last Governor of New France. Braddock arrived in Virginia in February, 1755, and in April, assembled the Provincial Governors at Alexandria\* to plan the campaign. At this conference, four expeditions were planned. The first under General Lawrence, was designed to reduce Nova Scotia ; the second under Braddock, to recover the Ohio valley ; the third, under Governor Shirley, to capture Fort Niagara ; and the fourth, under Johnson, to take Fort St. Frederic [Crown Point]. Braddock set out in June with 1,200 men, and a reserve of 1,000 more, to take Fort du Quesne, in Ohio. He was accompanied by Washington, as colonel of his staff. It was a month before he reached the Ohio. When within a few miles of the fort he was attacked by M. de Beaujeu, the commandant, with 250 Canadians and 600 Indians in ambuscade. A panic ensued, and Braddock was defeated with a loss of 800 out of his 1,200 troops, and all his artillery and stores. His officers behaved nobly. He himself had five horses shot under him, when he received a mortal wound, and died in a few days. This victory ended that campaign, and assured to the



General Braddock.

---

\* Alexandria (since famous in the civil war between the Northern and Southern States) is nearly opposite Washington, on the Potomac. The Governors present at this conference were, Shirley : of *Massachusetts* ; Dinwiddie, of *Virginia* ; Delaney, of *New-York* ; Sharpe, of *Maryland* ; and Morris of *Pennsylvania*. Admiral Keppel, commander of the British fleet, was also present at the conference.

---

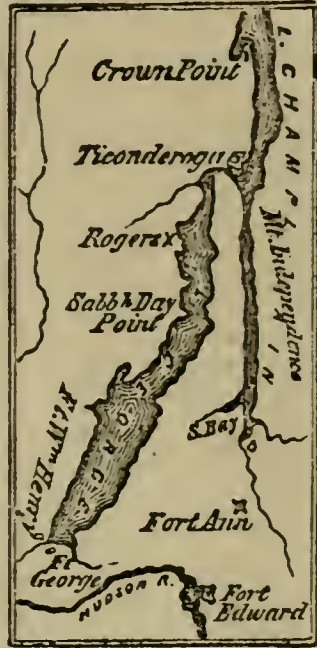
QUESTIONS. What did the French and English do ? Who succeeded Du Quesne ? Give a sketch of Braddock. What is said of Alexandria ? Give an account of the battle in Ohio ? How did the battle end ? How many troops were engaged in the battle ?



French the possession of the valley of the Ohio for the time. This loss of prestige to the British troops had a disastrous effect upon the Indians, who joined the French, and inflicted great misery upon the English settlements. General Shirley felt it necessary, under the circumstances, to abandon his projected attack on Niagara. The other expeditions were, however, prosecuted with vigor.

44. *General Dieskau's Career.*—

In the meantime, General Baron Dieskau\* [dee-esk-o] had arrived in Canada with a large French force. Hoping to rival the success which had attended the French arms in Ohio, he lost no time in marching from Fort St. Frederic (Crown Point) to attack the advancing columns of the British provincial militia, which had been collected under Gen. Johnson, in the vicinity of Lake George. Leaving half of his force at Carillon (Ticonderoga), (where a very strong new French Fort had been erected this year), Dieskau came up with a detachment of Gen. Johnson's men



Forts on Lake George and Champlain.

under Col. Williams. Forming an ambuscade, he attacked and scattered the British force—killing its leader, Col. Williams. He then pushed on to attack Johnson's chief post at Fort Edward (Hudson River), which had just been constructed by Gen. Lyman. In this he entirely failed,—Johnson being too well posted at Fort William Henry (at the head of Lake George), and his own force being too small. Dieskau, in attacking

\* John Armand, Baron Dieskau, a lieutenant-general and commander of the French forces sent against Fort Edward. He was found severely wounded by the British soldiers, but was kindly treated by them and sent to New York, and thence to France, where he died in 1767. In token of the warm friendship which had sprung up between him and Sir William Johnson, Dieskau sent him, before leaving New York, a handsome sword.

QUESTIONS.—Who was sent out from France? What did he do, and what is said of him? Mention the names of the forts on the map.

William Henry, was wounded and taken prisoner, and his men forced to retreat. For Colonel Johnson's prowess in this battle, he was knighted by the king.

45. *Cause of the Double Defeat of Braddock and Dieskau.*—By a singular coincidence the two brave generals (Braddock and Dieskau, who had been specially sent out from Europe to conduct the opposing campaign in America), failed at the outset of their career. Both failed from a similar cause. They were over-confident in regard to the effect of the discipline of their troops, and vain-glorious of their own European military skill. They looked with indifference, if not with contempt, on the colonial troops, and scorned to be guided by the superior knowledge of the colonial officers, whose experience in desultory forest warfare would have been of the utmost service to them, had they had the good sense to avail themselves of it. As a natural result, defeat and disaster befel them both, together with a loss of prestige to European generalship, when tested in the tangled woods, morasses and swamps of America.\*



Sir William Johnson.

46. *Results of the first Campaign, 1755.*—Sir Wm Johnson's success at the battle of Lake George led to no practical results; for in reply to the demand of the British government to demolish Fort St. Frederic (Crown Point), the French still further strengthened their position in the Champlain Valley. Sir William† was unable to march against the French stronghold at Fort St. Frederic, but contented himself with strengthening Fort Wil-

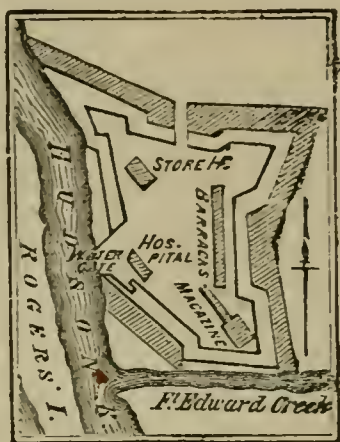
\* The sad fate of these two noted Generals, and of the brave men under their command, was but too frequently repeated, with more or less disaster throughout the American Revolutionary War. This was owing to the obstinacy of many of the newly arrived royalist officers, who scorned to adopt the more practical strategy and knowledge of Indian forest warfare which was so familiar to their loyalist companions in arms.

† Sir William Johnson was born in Ireland in 1715, and came to Amer-

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the battle of Fort William Henry. How was Colonel Johnson rewarded by the king? What led to the defeat of Braddock and Dieskau? What is said of their military mistakes in the note? Mention the results of the first campaign.



liam Henry and Fort Edward. He entrusted to Captain Rodgers, a famous ranger, the duty of harassing the garrison at Fort St. Frederic, and having resigned his commission he returned home. Forts Frontenac and Niagara having been reinforced, the British hesitated to attack them. In Nova Scotia, however, Colonel Monckton's attack upon the French posts was completely successful.\* Meanwhile the English colonists of New Hampshire suffered great hardships from the inroads of the St. Francis Indians, through Lake Memphremagog; while later in the year the French colonists had, in their own country, to endure all the privations of a famine, owing to a scant crop. In December, Gen. Shirley, the commander-in-chief, summoned the governors of the English colonies to a council of war at New York. The scheme which he laid before them was concurred in, and sent to England for approval. But the French king, Louis XV., not to be forestalled, determined to des-



Fort Edward.

ica in 1738 to manage the lands of his uncle (Sir P. Warren) on the Mohawk. He was agent of the British Government in its transactions with the Six Nation Indians, during the whole of the Seven Years' war. He was the friend of Brant, and acquired great influence over, and was greatly beloved by, the Iroquois, who made him one of their chiefs. For his defeat of General Dieskau, at Lake George, in 1755, he was knighted. In 1759, on the death of General Prideaux [pree-dol], he took Fort Niagara, and was made a baronet. He died in the Mohawk valley, in 1774, aged 60 years. The church which was built by him, and in which he was buried, having been burned in 1836, his remains were reinterred by Bishop Potter in 1862.

\* Hon. Robert Monckton, who afterwards became a Lieutenant-General in the British Army, and Governor of New York and of Nova Scotia, was the second son of the first Viscount Galway. He served under Lord Loudoun and General Wolfe, and took part in the reduction of Nova Scotia and of Canada. In 1764, he was sent to take the Island of Martinique, the capture of which he successfully accomplished. He died in 1782.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of Colonel Monckton? Give a sketch of Sir William Johnson. What is said of Captain Rodgers? Mention the privations endured by the colonists. What is said of the inroads of the St. Francis Indians? Mention the steps taken by General Shirley.



patch M. Montcalm [mont-kahm], one of his ablest generals, to Canada early in 1756.\* Montcalm was accompanied by General de Lévis, M. de Bourgainville, and 14,000 men, provisions, war materials, and money. George II. was equally prompt. With Gen. Abercromby and a large reinforcement, he sent out the Earl of Loudoun as governor of Virginia and generalissimo.† The House of Commons also voted £115,000 sterling to raise and equip the colonial militia. With a view to conciliate the Iroquois and secure their co-operation, Sir William Johnson was, at their request, appointed "sole superintendent of the Six Nations and other Northern Indians," and the various provinces were required to transact all business relating to the Indians through him.

47. *Heroism of Capt. Rodgers and Col. Bradstreet.*—About this time a daring feat was performed on Lake Champlain, by Capt. Rodgers, the ranger. Leaving the head of Lake George with fifty men in five boats, he stealthily glided down the lake, and then carried the boats overland to Lake Champlain. Rowing by night, and lying concealed by day (often within hearing of the passing boats of the French), he passed Forts Ticonderoga and St. Frederic until he came to where the supply schooners of the enemy, on their way to the forts, were lying at anchor. Rodgers suddenly attacked and captured them. Then abandoning his boats and

---

\* Louis Joseph de Montcalm (Marquis of St. Veran), a distinguished French General, was born at Condiac, in France, in 1712. He distinguished himself at the battle of Placenza, and, in 1756, was made a Field Marshal. Having succeeded General Dieskau in Canada, he took Oswego from the English in that year, and Fort William Henry (Lake George), in 1757; but was defeated by Gen. Wolfe, on the Plains of Abraham, 13th September, 1759. In the battle he received a mortal wound, and died on the morning of the 14th, greatly regretted; aged 47.

† John Campbell, Earl of Loudoun, was born in 1705. He raised a Highland regiment to oppose the pretender, in 1745; but retired to Skye without striking a blow. He seems to have had very little, either of military skill or courage. In 1756 he was sent to America as commander-in-chief, but having failed to accomplish anything satisfactorily, was recalled in 1758. He died in 1782, aged 77 years.

---

QUESTIONS.—Who were sent out from Europe to prosecute the campaign? Sketch Montcalm and the Earl of Loudoun. How were the Iroquois conciliated?

taking his prisoners, he marched them overland to Fort William Henry, at the head of Lake George. By this heroic exploit in the heart of the enemy's country, the French garrisons were deprived of a large supply of provisions, stores and money. By direction of Governor Vaudreuil, De Villiers threatened Oswego (which was considered the key to the British position on Lake Ontario), with a view of its being invested by Montcalm. In the meantime, Col. Bradstreet† showed great intrepidity in bringing reinforcements and provisions to the Oswego garrison from Schenectady. On his return he was attacked by a large force in ambuscade; but so skilfully did he defend himself that he compelled his enemies to fly in disorder.



General Abercromby.\*

48. *Capture of Oswego.*—The reinforcements brought to Oswego, by Col. Bradstreet, were not sufficient; for Montcalm had secretly advanced upon the fort with a large force from Frontenac. After a brief attack, although gallantly resisted, he compelled the besieged to abandon Fort Ontario on the 12th of August and retreat

---

\* James Abercromby, a General in the British Army, was born in Scotland in 1706. He served in Flanders and in Brittany. In 1756-7 he was despatched by William Pitt (Earl of Chatham), as Brigadier under Lord Loudoun to reduce Louisbourg and take Fort William Henry (Lake George). He was appointed to succeed General Lord Loudoun in 1758; but having failed, he was in turn superseded by Sir Jeffery Amherst. He died in 1781, aged 75 years.

† John Bradstreet, afterwards Major-General in the British Army, was born in 1711. He was a Colonel and Adjutant-General in the Provincial militia, and did essential service in the expedition against Louisbourg in 1745, and in the campaigns of 1756-9. He was appointed Governor of St. Johns, Newfoundland, in 1746. He with great heroism, relieved Oswego, and afterwards gallantly captured Fort Frontenac. He was unsuccessful in his expedition against the Western Indians in 1764. He died at New York in 1774, aged 63 years.

---

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the acts of bravery which Colonel Bradstreet and Captain Rodgers performed. Give a sketch of Colonel Bradstreet and of General Abercromby. Did Oswego hold out? What did Montcalm do there?



to Fort Oswego on the opposite side of the river. At this fort Col. Mercer, the commandant, having been killed, the garrison surrendered. So exasperated were the Indian allies of the French at the loss of so many of their warriors, that Montcalm had to shoot down six of them before they would desist from scalping the prisoners. To conciliate the Iroquois, who looked with jealousy upon the British fort in their territory, he destroyed the fort, and returned to Frontenac in triumph, with 1,400 prisoners (who were sent to Montreal), 134 cannon, and a large amount of military stores. The victory was a most important one for the French, and added so much to their prestige among the Iroquois, that at their solicitation, a deputation from each of the cantons (except the Mohawk) went to Montreal to conclude a treaty of peace with De Vaudreuil, the governor. Sir William Johnson set vigorously at work to counteract this fatal influence. By the aid of his faithful friends, the Mohawks, he was partially successful, and dispatched several war parties to harass the enemy. The capture of Oswego had the further effect of preventing any hostile movements on the part of the British commander during the remainder of the year.

49. *Progress of the Second Campaign, 1756.*—In the second campaign the French were first in the field. In March, Gen. De Lévis with a force of three hundred men suddenly penetrated by way of La Présentation (Ogdensburg), to Fort Bull, one of the chain of posts between Schenectady and Oswego, and destroyed the magazine there. These successes of the French, and other causes, cooled the ardor of the Iroquois; and it required the greatest skill on the part of Sir Wm. Johnson to restore harmony and to “brighten the covenant chain” between them and the English.

50. *The Third Campaign of 1757—Capture of Fort*

---

QUESTIONS. Give a sketch of the siege. How did it end? How had Montcalm to interpose to protect the English prisoners? What effect had this victory? Sketch the progress of the second campaign, of 1756.



*William Henry.*—The success of the French, in 1757, was very marked. On the 18th March, they advanced against Fort William Henry, but were gallantly repulsed by Major Eyre, and compelled to retreat down Lake George. In June, Lord Loudoun (having had a conference with the colonial governors) left New York with a large fleet and 6,000 men to take the strong fortress of Louisbourg,—the key to the French possessions on the seaboard. At Halifax he was joined by more ships and men; but having heard that Louisbourg was largely reinforced, he feared to attack it, and returned to New York with some of his troops, which he sent to Albany. Part of the fleet sailed to Louisbourg on a cruise; but the ships were disabled in a storm, and the commander gave up the enterprise. In July, Lieutenant Marin and Combière made successful attacks upon the English Fort Edward, and upon a fleet of supply boats on Lake George. In the following month, Montcalm himself invested Fort William Henry. Col. Munro, who had only a small force, was called upon to surrender; but as he expected reinforcements from Gen. Webb (who was in Fort Edward near him), he refused to do so. Montcalm vigorously pressed the siege, while Webb, who feared to go outside of his fort, left his gallant companion to bear the brunt alone, and even advised him to surrender. This, Munro indignantly refused to do; and it was not until ten of his cannon had burst, and his ammunition had failed, that he lowered his flag. Montcalm permitted Munro's little band to march out with all the honors of war. The Indian allies of the French, however (having got some rum from the English, contrary to Montcalm's advice), treacherously fell upon them; and before the French general could interpose, thirty of the English were scalped, and two hundred of them carried off as prisoners to Montreal. The remainder were rescued and sent under escort to Webb. De Vaudreuil

---

QUESTIONS.—What was attempted to be done by Lord Loudoun at Louisbourg? Sketch the third campaign, of 1757. Give an account of the attack by Marin. What is said of General Webb? Give an account of the siege and massacre at Fort William Henry.

ransomed the two hundred from the Indians at Montreal, and sent them to Halifax. The fort itself was destroyed, and Montcalm retired to Fort St. Frederic (Crown Point), and Ticonderoga. Scarcely had this reverse been experienced, than another equally disastrous one fell upon the quiet settlements in the rich German flats on the Hudson, and on those in the Mohawk valley. A large force of French and Indians under Bellêtre, taking advantage of Montcalm's attack upon Fort William Henry, had suddenly advanced upon these settlements and swept through them with fire and sword.

51. *The Fourth Campaign of 1758.*—General Lord Loudoun, the commander-in-chief, having failed to act either with judgment or energy, was superseded by General Abercromby; and in other respects, the British Cabinet, under the guidance of the elder Pitt, evinced its determination to prosecute the war with unusual vigor. Circular letters were addressed to each of the colonies in March, offering royal troops and warlike material in abundance, provided they would select officers and raise such additional men among themselves as might be required. Further, as a mark of favor, provincial colonels were raised to the rank of brigadier generals and lieutenant colonels to that of colonels. So heartily were these circulars responded to, that in two months twenty thousand colonial troops were sent to Albany, equipped and officered ready to take the field. On the part of the royal forces sent out from England, the campaign in 1758 was signalized by the gallant and memorable capture of Louisbourg, the fortified capital of Cape Breton; but on the part of the colonial forces and the regular troops, under Gen. Abercromby, it proved a disgraceful failure. In July, Abercromby decided to proceed down Lake George and attack Montcalm at Ticonderoga. The youthful and gallant

---

QUESTIONS.—How did Lord Loudoun succeed? Who superseded him? Give a sketch of the fourth campaign, of 1758. What course did Pitt pursue towards the colony? Give an account of the proposals made to the colonies.



Lord Howe\* was, however, the real soul of the expedition. His untimely death in a slight skirmish after landing, cast such a damper upon the whole army that Abercromby felt paralyzed and withdrew his army to the landing. Nevertheless the provincial rangers, under Col. Bradstreet and Capt. Rodgers, pushed forward and gained a good position near the fort. Abercromby now advanced, and sent Clerk, an en-



Lord Howe.

gineer officer, with Capt. Stark (afterwards noted as an American General in the Revolution), and a few of his rangers to reconnoitre. Clerk recommended an assault; but Stark advised against it, as the outer defences of logs and branches would only entangle the men, and enable Montcalm to repel any assault made upon him. Abercromby refused to take Stark's advice, and ordered the troops to advance. This they did most gallantly, preceded by the provincial rangers as sharpshooters under Rodgers. As Stark had predicted, however, the troops got entangled, and, under a fearful storm of bullets from Montcalm's men, were thrown into confusion. Abercromby at once sounded a retreat, which, had not Bradstreet interposed, would have degenerated into a disgraceful rout. Great was the consternation at this disastrous termination of Abercromby's ill-starred expedition. Colonel Bradstreet and the provincial militia burned to wipe out this disgrace. He renewed his entreaty to Abercromby to be allowed a sufficient force to raze Fort Frontenac to the ground. A council of war was therefore held; and by a small majority the

---

\* So beloved was Lord Howe (brother to the Admiral, who succeeded to his title), that the Legislature of Massachusetts erected a monument to his memory in Westminster Abbey.

---

QUESTIONS.—What is said of Colonel Bradstreet, Captain Rodgers and Lord Howe? What part did Abercromby, Stark and Rodgers take in the attack on Fort Ticonderoga? How did it end?



required permission was given. Bradstreet lost no time in joining General Stanwix at the new fort which he was then erecting at the Oneida portage (now Rome), on the Mohawk River. With 2,700 provincials, which General Stanwix had given him, and about fifty Iroquois under Red Head and Capt. J. Butler, he crossed the lake in open boats, and in two days after reaching the fort, compelled the commandant to capitulate. Thus was Col. Bradstreet's heroic enterprise crowned with complete success; and all the stores and shipping of the enemy fell into his hands. Great rejoicings followed this important victory; for it was felt that, with the fall of Fort Frontenac, was destroyed Montcalm's power against the English on the great lakes. The noble Montcalm was chagrined, but not discouraged; for, said he: "We are still resolved to find our graves under the ruins of the colony." On hearing of Abercromby's disaster, Gen. Amherst brought five regiments from Louisbourg, by way of Boston, to reinforce him. He then returned to his army. The remainder of the campaign was chiefly favorable to the British. To Gen. Forbes was entrusted the reduction of Fort du Quesne in the Ohio valley. Contrary to the advice of some provincial officers, Forbes sent forward an advance party under Col. Bouquet [boo-kay],—part of which fell into an ambuscade, and was completely routed. Forbes himself supposed that the enemy was too strong to be successfully attacked, and had loitered so long on the way, that, had it not been for Colonel Washington, no attack on the fort would have been attempted that season. The garrison, however, was found to be so weak, that on the approach of the Virginians, the French commandant destroyed the fort, and retired in great haste and confusion down the Ohio to the Mississippi. In honor of the British premier, the fort abandoned by the French was repaired and named Fort Pitt (now Pittsburg).

---

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of Bradstreet's heroic enterprise against Fort Frontenac, and the result. How did the Campaign succeed? In whose honor was the new name given to Fort du Quesne?

52. *The Final Campaign of 1759* did not open till near mid-summer. In consequence of the failure of Gen. Abercromby, he was in turn succeeded by Gen. Sir Geoffrey Amherst as commander-in-chief.\* The French were busy in the early part of the year in strengthening their forts, and in arranging their plans of defence. They received few reinforcements, but they made the very best disposition of those they had. The British plan of the campaign was threefold :—(1) General Prideaux was to attack Niagara, (2) General Amherst, Ticonderoga,† and (3) General Wolfe,‡ Quebec. General Prideaux, having in May been joined by Sir William Johnson with nearly 1,000 Iroquois, left Oswego in July to attack Niagara. After Prideaux had left Oswego, part of a French force, under Lacorne, crossed over from La Galette (now Chimney

---

\* Sir Geoffrey (subsequently Lord) Amherst, was born in England in 1717. In 1758, he was appointed commander of the expedition against Louisbourg, Cape Breton. He took part with Wolfe in the capture of Quebec, 1759, and was in consequence raised to the rank of Major-General, and appointed Governor of Virginia. He compelled the capitulation of Montreal in 1760, and was appointed Governor-General of Canada. In 1761, he was made a Lieut.-General and a K.C.B. In 1768, he opposed the Stamp Act, and was in consequence dismissed from the Governorship of Virginia; but in 1770, he was appointed Governor of Guernsey, and in 1776 received a patent as Baron Amherst of Honesdale in England, and in 1787 as Baron Amherst of Montreal. He became General in 1778, and Commander-in-chief in 1782. A grant, in consideration of his services, was made to him from the Jesuits' estates in Lower Canada, but it was not confirmed. He was a man of sound judgment and great energy. He died in 1797, aged 81 years. After his death, a compromise was made with his heirs in lieu of the grant from the Jesuits' estates.

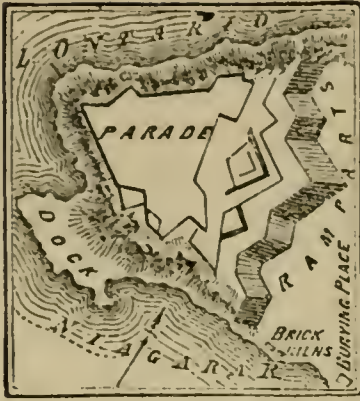
† "Cheonderoga," or the "Noisy," was the Indian name of the falls at the outlet of Lake George into Lake Champlain—hence Ticonderoga.

‡ James Wolfe, an English general, was born in Westerham, Kent, in 1726. He had distinguished himself in the campaigns on the continent of Europe, when, in 1757, he was at the age of thirty-one years, created a Major-General, and despatched by Pitt to aid in the conquest of New France. In conjunction with Boscawen and Amherst, he took the strongly fortified post of Louisbourg, Cape Breton, in 1758; and in 1759 he was entrusted with an expedition against Canada, as above.

---

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the early part of the final campaign of 1759? Give a sketch of Lord Amherst. What is said of Fort Ticonderoga and its name? Give a sketch of General Wolfe.





Fort Niagara.

Island), near Frontenac, and sought to surprise Colonel Haldimand \* at Oswego, but they were compelled to retire. When the English reached Niagara, they found it in a weak state of defence. It was however, nobly defended. During the attack the British Consul lost his life. He was succeeded by Sir Wm. Johnson, who defeated a relief party under D'Aubrey, and captured the fort. Thus fell the last stronghold in that chain of French trading posts which linked Canada with Louisiana. Communication with Canada having been thus cut off, the French blew up and retired from their posts, at Venango (in Pennsylvania), Presqu'-Isle (Erie, on Lake Erie), and Le Bœuf (on Oak Orchard Creek, New York). General Stanwix soon afterwards took possession of them. Johnson himself was highly commended. The King made him a baronet for his distinguished bravery.

53. *Amherst's Expedition against Ticonderoga.*—In July, Gen. Amherst left Albany with a large force, and advanced to the head of Lake George. Proceeding cautiously down the lake, he reached Carillon (Ticonderoga), which had proved so fatal a spot to Abercromby. To the surprise of Amherst, Bourlamaque, the French commander, abandoned the fort and retreated, first to

---

\* Sir Frederick Haldimand, though a native of Switzerland, rose to be Lieutenant-General in the British army. He took part in the American campaigns which led to the cession of Canada to England, and distinguished himself at Ticonderoga, Oswego, Montreal, and elsewhere. He was lieutenant-governor of Canada in 1777, and succeeded Lord Dorchester as Governor-in-chief in 1778. In 1784 he returned to England, and in 1785 was reappointed Governor of Canada; but, being very unpopular, he did not come out. He, however, retired to Switzerland, where he died in 1791.

---

QUESTIONS. Give an account of the capture of Niagara. What was attempted at Oswego? Give a sketch of Col. Haldimand. What other forts fell into the hands of the British?

Fort St. Frederic,\* which he destroyed, and then to Isle-aux-Noix. Here he remained without molestation, and strengthened himself within entrenchments which he threw up. Amherst, however, followed him for some distance; but as the weather proved bad, the small fleet under Captain Loring was alone able to advance. That officer captured two of the enemy's vessels. Amherst himself soon afterwards returned to Crown Point for the winter. He employed his army in cutting a road to New England, rebuilding the fort at Ticonderoga, and enlarging Fort St. Frederic, which he named Crown Point. Near the ruins of Fort William Henry, he erected Fort George.

54. *Rodgers' Expedition against the Indians of St. Francis.*—The Indians of St. Francis, on the St. Lawrence, had long been noted for their stealthy and destructive attacks upon the New England settlements. Major Rodgers, with his provincial rangers, determined at length to destroy their stronghold. With a small force he penetrated to St. Francis from Crown Point. Halting his men near by, he visited the village in disguise, and the next morning before daybreak two hundred of the sleeping Indians were put to death, and their village burned, as an atonement for the six hundred English scalps which the rangers found dangling in the wigwams there. The squaws and children were, however, by Amherst's orders, allowed to escape. The rangers were pursued, and suffered great hardships. Many of them, after this deed of blood, lost their lives while on their way back to the settlements.

55. *The Capture of Quebec — Wolfe and Montcalm.*—Meantime the most memorable contest in the whole war

---

\* This fort stood on *Point à la Chevalier*. Lord Amherst partially rebuilt it on a much larger scale than that of the old fort, and named it *Crown Point*.

---

QUESTIONS.—Mention the expedition against the St. Francis Indians. Give an account of the campaign of General Amherst. What is said of Fort St. Frederic?



was taking place at Quebec. Wolfe, who was ably supported by Generals Monckton, Townshend and Murray, left Louisbourg, and reached the Isle of Orleans, with 30,000 men, on the 25th of June. . Here he remained to reconnoitre until the 30th, when part of the force under Gen. Monckton was transferred to Point Lévis. Every effort was made speedily to commence the attack; and from this point, on the 13th

of July, the batteries first opened on the French citadel. Montcalm sought to dislodge Monckton, but failed. Wolfe's own camp was pitched on the left bank of the Montmorency River, while the French camp lay between the St.

Charles and Beauport. On the 31st July, Wolfe attacked Montcalm's camp near Beauport with a strong naval and military force, but was defeated and compelled to retire. Detachments were sent out in various directions to destroy the French posts, but with little effect. At length, on 20th August, Wolfe called together his generals to consult on some new mode of attack. They unanimously opposed the making of another assault on the camp at Beauport, and strongly



Wolfe.



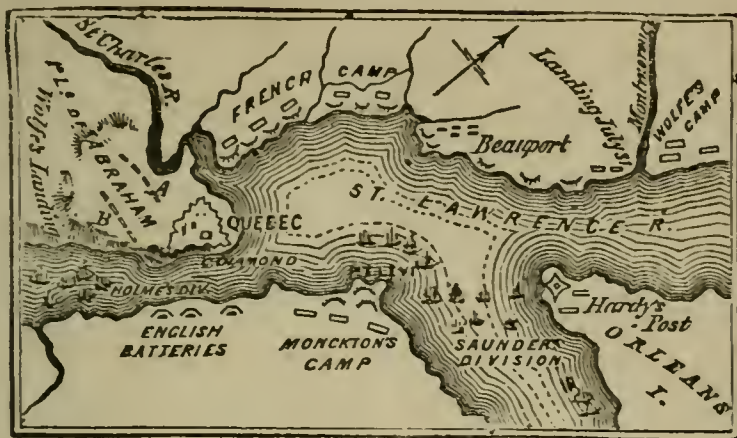
Montcalm.

recommended that Quebec should be attacked from above rather than from below the city. Wolfe approved of the

---

QUESTIONS. What was transpiring at Quebec? Who were Wolfe's generals and how many soldiers had he? When did he arrive at Quebec? How did he open the memorable campaign, and with what success?

advice, and, on the 3rd of September, transferred his camp to Point Lévis. Having at length completed all his plans, Wolfe, on the night of the 12th of the month, silently landed his men at a place since called Wolfe's Cove. Having learned the countersign from two deserters, Wolfe was enabled to pass the shore sentinels, on his way up the river. At the Cove, the guard was overpowered; and si-



Military Operations at Quebec, 1759.

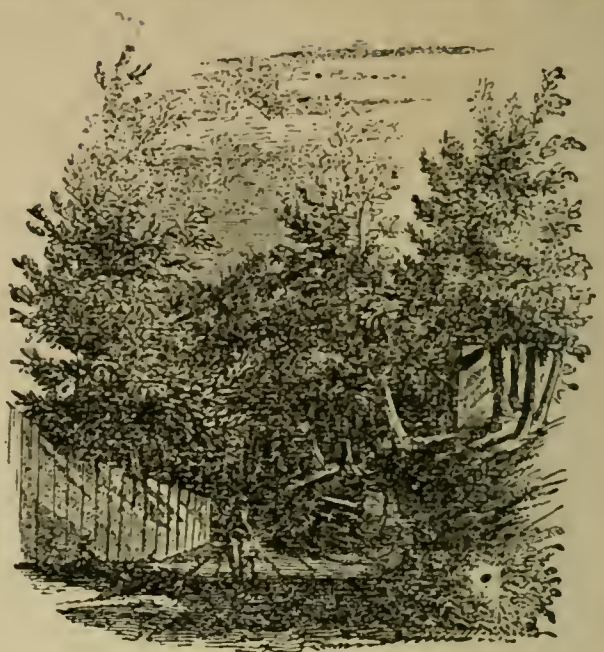
lently all that night there toiled up that steep ascent 8,000 British troops. At daybreak, the startling news reached the camp of the French General that the heights had been scaled, and that the enemy was in a strong position on the Plains of Abraham! Having arranged his forces, consisting of 4,500 men, he hastily moved forward to the attack. De Vaudreuil, the governor, advised, and even ordered, delay, until a larger force could be collected, and De Bourgainville recalled from Cape Rouge, just above Quebec (whither he had been sent to watch the movements of a part of the British attacking force): but all in vain. Montcalm was impetuous; and after rapidly crossing the St. Charles, he at once gave orders to advance, without even waiting to rest, or taking time to form in proper order of battle. Wolfe quietly waited the fierce

---

QUESTIONS. Point out on the map the two hostile camps. After his first failure what did Wolfe do? How was the new plan carried out? Give the particulars of the memorable ascent to the Plains of Abraham. How did Montcalm act when he received the news? In what way did de Vaudreuil seek to moderate Montcalm's impetuosity?



onslaught, and gave his men orders not to fire until the French soldiers were within forty or fifty yards. On the brave Frenchmen came, and as they neared Wolfe's troops, the rattle of musketry, at a given signal, extended, as if by magic, along the whole of his lines. As the French wavered at the deadly discharge, Wolfe gave the order to charge. Although already wounded, he led on the



Wolfe's Ravine.

*(Half way up the Heights.)*

grenadiers. He had scarcely gone more than a few paces before he was again struck, but this time he was mortally wounded.\* Nevertheless, with a wild shout his men still pressed on, while he was silently carried to the rear, near a well. The charge upon the advancing line of French troops was decisive, though they were cheered and encouraged to stand firm by the voice and example of Montcalm, who had already been twice wounded. At length, the loud shouts "They run! they run!" fell on the ear of the heroic Wolfe, and roused for a moment to consciousness the dying hero. "Who,—who run?" said he. "The enemy, sir; they give way everywhere," was the eager response. Then gasping a hurried message for Col. Burton, he turned on his side and said, "Now God

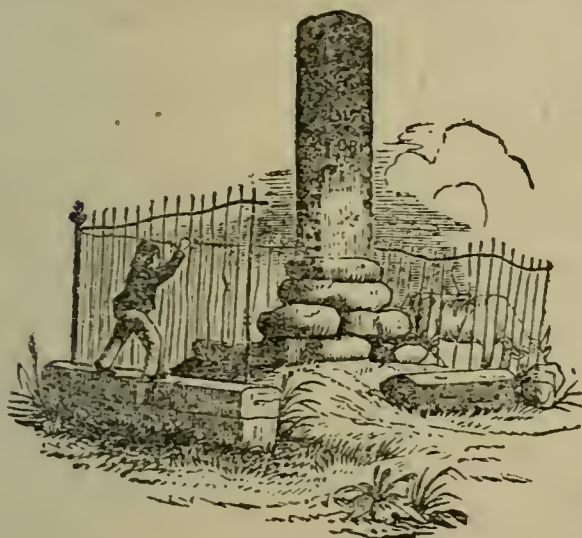
---

\* A sergeant whom Wolfe had reduced to the ranks for his cruelty to a soldier, and who had deserted to the French, is said to have aimed one of the fatal bullets at the hero. Braddock shared a similar fate; see page 80.

---

QUESTIONS. Give the particulars of this memorable battle. How was Wolfe wounded? Mention the particulars of Wolfe's last moments.

be praised; I die in peace!" and instantly the brave Wolfe expired. Montcalm himself with noble courage restrained the retreating soldiers; but, struck a third time, he fell from his horse mortally wounded, and was carried into the city. De Vaudreuil, on whom now devolved the chief command of Montcalm's army, rallied a portion of the troops, and successfully resisted for a time the advance of the victorious army into the city, but all in vain; for the battle was already decided in favor of the advancing columns of the enemy. Thus was this memorable battle fought and won, with a loss of 1,500 French and 700 British; and thus, in the memorable fall of Quebec, fell also, in Canada, (although the after-struggle was protracted for a



Wolfe's old Monument, Quebec.

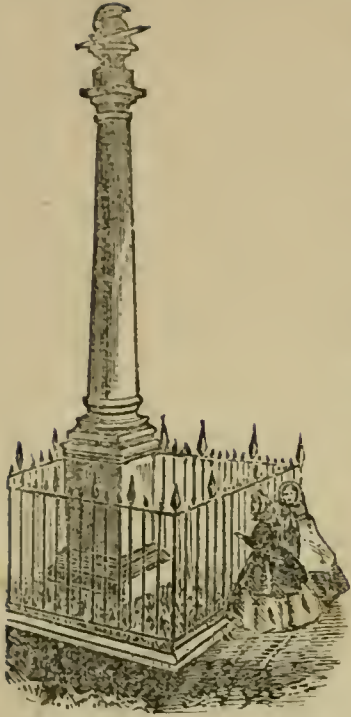
year,) that imperial power which, for more than one hundred and fifty years, had ruled the colonial destinies of New France. The history of French rule in America is full of heroic achievements—of touching and memorable incident; and its termination, though decisive, was still worthy of that great nation, whose history is parallel to our own in noble deeds and chivalrous renown.

56. *Death of Wolfe and Montcalm.*—The death of Wolfe and Montcalm, within so short a time of each other, created a profound feeling of regret. Wolfe's body was conveyed to England and buried at Greenwich. A monu-

---

QUESTIONS.—How did Montcalm bear his reverse? What happened to him during the battle? After Montcalm's death, how was the contest maintained? How many fell? What is said of French rule in Canada? How were the deaths of the two heroes regarded? Mention the honors paid to Wolfe's memory in England. What monuments were erected and where?





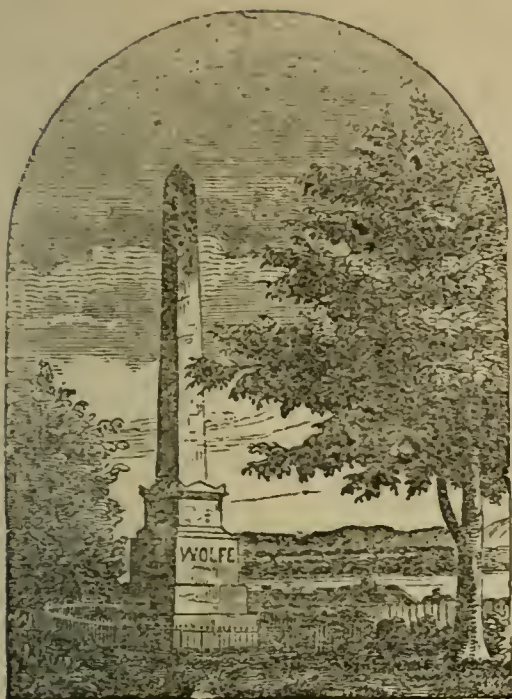
Wolfe's new Monument,  
erected in 1849.

ment was erected to his memory in Westminster Abbey, and another on the Plains of Abraham (which was replaced, in 1849, by the British troops serving in Canada, by a handsomer one), on the very spot where "Wolfe died, victorious." Montcalm died on the morning after the battle, aged 47. He was buried at the Ursuline Convent, Quebec. A noble and chivalrous soldier, he was regretted by friend and foe. A monument to the memory of himself and Wolfe was erected by subscription at Quebec, in 1827,—chiefly through the exertions of the Earl of Dalhousie, then Governor-General of Canada.

57. *Events leading to the close of the Campaign.*—On the death of Montcalm, General de Lévis, then at Montreal, took command of the French army. Before his arrival, De Vaudreuil, the Governor, endeavored to induce M. De Ramzay, who still held the citadel, to defend Quebec. In this, however, de Ramzay permitted himself to be overruled by the inhabitants. De Lévis on his arrival sought to remedy this mistake, but before he could complete his plans, the garrison had surrendered to General Townshend, on the 18th of September. De Lévis retired with his army to Jacques Cartier river, 27 miles from Quebec, and de Vaudreuil went to Montreal. After reinforcing various posts with his soldiers, de Lévis rejoined the Governor, and awaited aid from France. After the capitulation of Quebec, General Murray, the British governor, strengthened the defences of the city, and Admiral Saunders was sent to England with a thousand prisoners.

---

QUESTIONS.—Mention the particulars of Montcalm's death. What monument was erected to Wolfe and Montcalm? Who took command of the French army in Canada? What did the Marquis de Vaudreuil do? How did the surrender of Quebec affect the movements of de Lévis?



Wolfe and Montcalm's Monument.

### 58. *Final Efforts to Take and Retake Canada.*

The fall of Quebec greatly stimulated the zeal of the colonists to possess themselves of Canada. They freely voted men and money for the enterprise, and Pitt further stimulated them by a patriotic appeal, backed by large reinforcements and an abundant supply of arms and ammunition for the provincial volunteers. Although the scanty succors sent from France failed to reach it, Governor de Vaudreuil determined to make a final

effort to retake Quebec. He sent General de Lévis, therefore, from Montreal with all his available forces. After great difficulty, Bourlamarque, with an advanced guard, gained a footing in the rear of the city in April, 1760. Gen. Murray, anxious to attack the French before they could concentrate their strength, at once marched out to give them battle. About 3,500 men were engaged on each side. After a desperate encounter at Ste. Foye, the British were forced to retire within the city walls, leaving their artillery in the hands of the French. De Lévis having arrived, now commenced the siege, and both parties anxiously waited for reinforcements from home. Those for General Murray having arrived first, De Lévis was compelled to raise the siege and retreat, leaving all his stores and some of his artillery behind him. Leaving a corps of observation near Quebec, want of stores and provisions compelled him to distribute the rest of his army

---

QUESTIONS.—What followed the capitulation? Mention the efforts made by France to regain Canada.



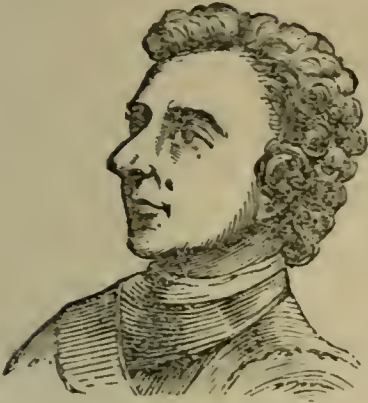
among the remaining French garrisons. He then visited the military posts at Isle-aux-Noix and Montreal, and sought to revive their drooping spirits.

59. *Campaign of 1760.*—Amherst's plan of the campaign for 1760, was to attack the outlying French posts of Isle-aux-Noix, Os-we-gat-chie (La Presentation, now Ogdensburg), and Fort Levis at La Galette (an island in the St. Lawrence); then to concentrate all the troops and rangers for a combined attack on Montreal. Murray was to move up from Quebec; Colonel Haviland was to attack Isle-aux-Noix; and Amherst himself was to advance against La Galette and Oswegatchie, on his way down the river. In June, Amherst left Schenectady with 6,000 provincials and 4,000 regulars. In July, he was joined at Oswego by Sir Wm. Johnson and 600 Iroquois, afterwards increased to 1,330. From this place Sir Wm. Johnson sent friendly overtures to the Indians near Montreal, which were accepted. Having sent Col. Haldimand with 1,000 men as an advance guard, Amherst proceeded down the St. Lawrence in August. Oswegatchie was soon taken, but Fort Lévis, at La Galette, held out for some days, but at length surrendered. In August, Col. Haviland appeared before Isle-aux-Noix, and opened fire upon it. M. de Bourgainville, the French commandant, did not long resist the attack, but, having withdrawn with his main force, the rest of the garrison surrendered to the British forces. Thus the whole of the St. Lawrence and Lake Champlain region passed from the French into the hands of the English.

60. *Close of French Rule in Canada.*—At length the British forces from Quebec, Lake Champlain, and Oswego, converged slowly yet simultaneously upon Montreal; and early in September, Montreal was invested by a force of 17,000 men under Gen. Amherst. Resistance was useless; and, after some discussion, De Vaudreuil proposed to capitulate. To this Gen. Amherst agreed,

---

QUESTIONS.—What was the result of Murray's encounter? Give a sketch of Amherst's proceeding.



Lord Amherst.

and on the 8th of September, 1760, was signed that memorable document by which the whole of Canada was solemnly transferred from the French to the British crown. Thus, after one hundred and fifty years of heroic struggle, with scant means of defence, against powerful rival colonists and a relentless Indian enemy, the first promoters of European

civilization and enterprise in Canada were compelled to give place to a more aggressive race. But they did so with honor. Little, however, did those think who were then the victors over a brave enemy in Canada, that, within twenty years after the French standard had ceased to float at Quebec, their own proud flag would be ignominiously lowered at New York, as well as at every other fort and military post within the thirteen American colonies. And little, too, did they think that soon they would be compelled to maintain at Quebec a military and commercial supremacy, which the vanquished French colonists had so valiantly done during the preceding one hundred years. As a parting tribute to their unflinching valor and fidelity, the last defenders of Canada, ere returning to France, obtained from their conquerors, and left as a legacy to their countrymen, a guarantee for the free exercise of their religion, and for other privileges which were dear to a people about to be transferred from their own to the protection of a foreign flag.\*

61. *Transference of the French Posts at the West.*—After the capitulation of Montreal was signed, Major Rod-

---

\* The brief military details which are given of the several campaigns in this *Seven Years' War* are taken chiefly from *Précis of Wars in Canada from 1755 to 1814*, by Sir James Carmichael Smyth, Bart. London, 1862.

---

QUESTIONS.—How did the Lake Champlain country pass out of the hands of the French in the campaign of 1760? Give the particulars of the close of the French rule in Canada. What was the victor's after-fate?



gers, with two hundred of his trusty rangers, was directed, according to previous arrangement to that effect, to proceed westward, and to receive the final submission of the outlying French posts at Detroit, St. Joseph, Michilimackinac, Ste. Marie, and Des Puans (Green Bay), and to escort their commanders to Quebec. Rodgers proceeded on his mission, and having delivered despatches to General Monckton, at Fort Pitt, soon reached Presqu'Isle (Erie, on Lake Erie). There his own party had been joined by some Indians and provincials. Dividing the combined force into two parties, Rodgers and his detachment proceeded to Detroit in boats, while the remainder went by land. After landing one evening, for the night, and before reaching Detroit, he was confronted by Pontiac,\* an Ottawa chief, who demanded by what right he had advanced through his territory with a hostile band. After mutual explanations, Pontiac suffered him to proceed on his mission; but the chief evidently felt that in the fall of French authority at Quebec fell also that Indian balance of power between the two great nations who were then contending for supremacy on this continent.

62. *The first Massacre at Wyoming.*—Soon after the incorporation of the Delawares with the Iroquois, the valley of the Wyoming was given to them as their hunting grounds. A Connecticut company set up a claim to the valley on the strength of the king's indefinite charter to

---

\* Pontiac was a celebrated chief of the Ottawa tribe of Indians, who, removing from the valley of the great river of that name, settled near Michilimackinac. An ally of the French, he resisted the efforts of the English to gain possession of the French forts after the fall of Quebec in 1759-60. In June, 1763, he matured a bold and comprehensive plan for the extinction of English power, by the simultaneous capture of the extensive chain of forts reaching from Lake Michigan to the Niagara. The plot failed, and Pontiac afterwards professed friendship for the English; but an Indian spy having discovered, in a speech, symptoms of treachery, stabbed him to the heart, and fled. Pontiac's loss was greatly deplored; for he was a man of singular sagacity, daring courage, and statesmanlike views. The county of Pontiac, in Lower Canada, is called after this renowned chief.

---

QUESTIONS.—What privileges were granted to the vanquished? Mention the authority given for the military details. Give particulars of the transference of the Western French posts. What occurrence took place in June, 1763?

Plymouth in 1620 (on which that of Connecticut was based), and of an unauthorized grant from some of the Iroquois. The company formed a settlement there, 1761. This greatly irritated the Iroquois, and they determined to destroy it. Jealous too of the Delawares, who had in 1662 taken a prominent part in making a treaty with the English, a party of Iroquois visited the valley, and having treacherously set fire to the house of a noted Delaware chief (who perished in the flames), they charged the outrage upon the inhabitants. In revenge, the Delawares suddenly attacked the settlement, scalped most of the innocent inhabitants and burnt their houses. This was, however, only the prelude to a more terrible destruction of the same beautiful valley some years later by some lawless Indians under Col. John Butler, the famous ranger, who defied his authority and violated the pledges which he had given.

63. *The Conspiracy of Pontiac*.—Pontiac, who was at the head of the Ottawa confederacy of the Indians (which included the Remnants of the Western Hurons, the Potawatamies, Ojibways and Ottawas), saw in the fall of French power the destruction of the red man's influence in the contests between the rival white traders. As the power of one of the rivals had been annihilated, he was determined that the other should fall also, and that the Indians should again be supreme in their native wilds at the West. He therefore matured a bold and comprehensive plan for the extinction of English power on the upper lakes, by the simultaneous capture of the extensive chain of forts reaching from Lake Michigan to the Niagara river. Immediately on the first outbreak of the storm, Sir William Johnson summoned a grand council of the Iroquois to meet at the German Flats. All the cantons, except that of the powerful Senecas (whose castles were near Niagara), attended it and gave assur-

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of Pontiac's career. What did Pontiac think of the fall of the French power in Quebec? Give particulars of the first Wyoming Massacre.



ances of their fidelity. Sir William also sent Capt. Claus, his son-in-law, to hold a general council of the Canadian Indians at Sault St. Louis (Lachine). The St. Francis, Oswegatchie, Caughnawagas and other tribes which attended, proved their friendship by sending messengers up the Ottawa to Michilimackinac, and up the St. Lawrence and the lakes to Detroit, to notify their western allies that if they persisted in their hostility to the English, they would be compelled to take up the hatchet against them. In the meantime, nine forts were attacked about the same time, and their garrisons, on surrendering, were either massacred or dispersed. The capture of Michilimackinac was entrusted to the Ojibway and Sac, or Sauk, Indians. At this post, on the 4th of June, 1773, (King George's birthday), Minavavana, an Ojibway chief, invited the English to witness an Indian game of ball. Having played up to the gate of the fort, the Indians rushed in, seized and massacred the garrison, except a few who escaped.

64. *Pontiac's Siege of Detroit.*—Detroit, under Major Gladwin, was attacked by Pontiac himself in May; but the scheme failed,—an Ojibway girl having revealed the plot. The siege was nevertheless maintained by the Indians, with more than their usual constancy, for upwards of fifteen months. At length the garrison, which at first had been aided by some friendly French Canadians, and succored by Lieut. Cuyler and Capt. Dalzell, was finally relieved by Col. Bradstreet.

65. *The Relief of Detroit.*—Lieut. Cuyler had been sent with 76 men from Niagara to the beleaguered garrison in May. Near the mouth of the Detroit river he was suddenly attacked by the Hurons. He escaped; but 40 of his men were captured and put to death. In June, Cuyler again brought 60 men with ample supplies. In July, Gen. Amherst despatched his favorite aide-de-

QUESTIONS.—Give the particulars of Pontiac's conspiracy. How did the Indians regard the supplanters of the French? Mention the steps which were taken by Sir William Johnson, and with what success. How was Michilimackinac taken?

camp, Capt. Dalzell, with 260 men and twenty rangers, under Major Rodgers. Dalzell was a daring man, and on his arrival insisted upon making a night sortie; but Pontiac, who had been apprised of his design, was prepared, and Dalzell fell into an ambuscade at a little stream two miles from the fort (since called Bloody Run). He and his party were routed. Rodgers and his rangers, however, covered their retreat; but not until Dalzell and 70 of his men had fallen victims to their temerity.

66. *Bouquet's Relief of Fort Pitt.*—On hearing that Fort Pitt (now Pittsburg, and formerly Fort du Quesne) was besieged by the Delawares, Hurons and Shawanese, General Amherst despatched Colonel Bouquet from Philadelphia with 500 Highlanders to its relief. His march through the forest was a most memorable one; and on his way he gladdened the hearts of the beleaguered posts at Forts Redford and Ligonier. As Bouquet advanced, the Indians fled, determined, however, to annihilate him in passing through the defile at Bushy Run (a small stream ten miles from Fort Pitt), where they had laid an ambuscade for him. Bouquet's precautions were, however, equal to the stealthy stratagem of his dusky foes. As his advance guard emerged from the pass, the terrible war-whoop of the savage resounded through the forest. Bouquet's men instantly formed, and nobly resisted the sudden assault of the hidden foe. For seven hours the battle waged, until night fell upon the combatants. At grey dawn the infuriated Indians renewed the attack; but Bouquet, having posted some of his men in ambuscade, feigned a retreat. The Indians, not suspecting his stratagem, rushed forward, only to be attacked with deadly effect on every side. They fled in consternation; and Bouquet's heroic band, gathering up their dead and wounded, marched in triumph to the relief of the besieged garrison.

QUESTIONS.—What led to Pontiac's failure at Detroit? Give particulars of Cuyler, Dalzell and Rogers' efforts to relieve that garrison. What did General Amherst do there? Give a sketch of Colonel Bouquet's memorable march from Philadelphia to the relief of Fort Pitt.



67. *Effect of Bouquet's Victory—Johnson's Treaty.*—By this victory, the disgrace of Braddock's defeat in the same neighborhood was wiped out, and the spell of Indian invincibility in their own peculiar mode of forest warfare was broken. Pontiac himself, up at Detroit, felt the force of the blow; and his hosts gradually melted away into the forests or sued for peace. The Senecas remained implacable for a time, and did much harm; but Sir William Johnson had, at length, the satisfaction to obtain a satisfactory treaty at Niagara in 1764, from the representatives of all the principal tribes which occupied the territory lying between the St. Lawrence and the Upper Mississippi. By this treaty the Huron Indians ceded to the king the country lying on both sides of the Detroit strait, from Lake Erie to Lake Ste. Claire, and the Senecas ceded a strip of land, four miles in width on either side of the Niagara river from Lake Ontario to Lake Erie, on condition that it should be for the king's garrison alone, and that it should never become private property. As a token of their regard, they gave all the islands on the river to Sir William Johnson, but Sir William ceded them to the king. So great was Sir William's influence among them, that the Caughnawaga Indians,—a Mohawk tribe from Sault St. Louis (Lachine),—had previously come to Sir William to complain of an alleged purchase of their land, under a patent from Louis XIV, which they had never acknowledged, and which General Gage, the English governor of Montreal, had declared to be invalid. Sir William espoused their cause, and sent them home contented with assurances of his interposition on their behalf.

68. *Expedition against the Western Indians.*—In order to chastise the Delawares and the far-off tribes who had conspired with Pontiac, two expeditions were sent against them. One was entrusted to Col. Bradstreet, but he mis-

---

QUESTIONS.—Where did Bouquet obtain a victory? What was the effect of his victory? What followed? Mention the particulars of the Indian treaty.

managed it and was directed to return to Niagara. The other was entrusted to Col. Bouquet, and nobly did he do his duty. With fifteen hundred men he cautiously threaded his way from Fort Pitt through the trackless wilderness into the very heart of Ohio (then the hunting grounds of the faithless Delawares and Shawanese). The remembrance of Bushy Run was still fresh in their memories, and they hastened to send friendly messages to the avenging conqueror. Bouquet declined to treat with them, unless, as a preliminary condition, they would, within twelve days, deliver up to him every French and English prisoner in their hands—men, women and children—and furnish them with food, clothing and horses to convey them to Fort Pitt. So sternly did Bouquet insist upon these conditions, that in a few days he received no less than two hundred captives, taken by the Indians from English and French settlements in Pennsylvania, Ohio, New York and elsewhere. With these now happy fugitives and fourteen hostages, Bouquet set out for Fort Pitt, where he arrived in November, 1764.

69. *The Treaty of Paris, 1763.*—In the meantime, a treaty of peace between England, France, Spain and Portugal, was signed at Paris in February, 1763. By this treaty, France ceded to England the whole of her possessions in North America, with the exception of Louisiana and the small fishing islands of St. Pierre and Miquelon (off the coast of Newfoundland), and received back Martinique and Guadeloupe in the West Indies—England retaining Grenada and the Grenadines—while Spain received back Cuba in exchange for Florida.

70. *The French and English Colonial Systems contrasted.*—Most of the French military officers and troops, as well as many of the chief inhabitants, returned to France after the capitulation. Their return was encouraged by the English, who were anxious thus quietly to

---

QUESTIONS.—How did Sir William Johnson exert his influence among the Indians? Give a sketch of Col. Bouquet's famous expedition against the Western Indians.



rid themselves of a powerful antagonistic element in the population of their newly acquired possession. They well knew, from the character of the political and social structure of the French and English Colonies, that the process of assimilation between the two races, so long arrayed in hostility to each other, would be very slow.

71. *The System of Government in the French Colony.*—Independently of the dissimilarity in national tastes and habits, the relations of the French Colony with the Imperial government were essentially different from those which connected a British colony with the mother country. The French colony was a child of the State. Everything in it of a civil nature was under official patronage or political *surveillance*, while religious matters were subject to vigorous ecclesiastical control. Two principal objects engrossed the attention of the French colonists—the extension of the peltry traffic, and the conversion of the Indian tribes. As a means of carrying out these two great projects, exploration and discovery formed a chief feature of French colonial life.

72. *System of Government in the English Colony.*—In the English colony, the government, on the contrary, was rather a civil and social bond, than an expression of the embodied will of the Imperial authorities. It interfered as little as possible in matters of trade, leaving them to develop themselves as fast and as freely as the enterprise of the trader and the circumstances of the colony would admit. Hence, exploration and discovery within the colony formed but a subordinate part of the objects and pursuits of the English colonist. When, therefore, the rival colonists came into contact, it was rather in a struggle for enlarged boundaries for trade, or for influence over the Indian tribes. The momentous struggle which led to the separation of Canada from France, forever put an end to these struggles between the French and English colo-

---

QUESTIONS.—Give the particulars of the treaty of Paris. How did it affect French officers? How did the English view their departure? Mention the contrast between the French and English colonial systems.

nies for dominion over rival Indian tribes, and for the monopoly of the fur-trade. It also brought to a close a protracted contest for commercial and national supremacy, waged for nearly a century and a half between two of the foremost nations of Christendom. That contest, although it was too often utterly selfish in its aims and purposes, nevertheless unconsciously developed in a wonderful degree, even in both colonies, a spirit of enterprise and discovery which has scarcely had a parallel in later times, when steam and electricity have added, as it were, wings to man's locomotive and physical power.

---

QUESTIONS.—How did these systems affect the French and English colonists?

---

## CHAPTER VI.

BRITISH RULE, FIRST PERIOD ; FROM THE CONQUEST  
UNTIL THE DIVISION OF THE PROVINCE OF QUEBEC,  
1760–1792.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Establishment of English Colonial Government—American Designs upon Canada—Changes in the Constitution.*

1. *British Rule Inaugurated.*—It was after the treaty of peace, in 1763, that General Murray was appointed first Governor-General of the new British Province of Quebec, in place of Lord Amherst, who had hitherto acted as governor-in-chief. The boundaries of the new pro-

---

QUESTIONS.—Name the principal subjects of chapter five. When did British rule in Canada commence? Who was its first governor? Give the names of its divisions. What system of government was then adopted? Mention the population and state of Canada at this time.



vince were contracted by the separation from it of New Brunswick, Labrador, &c. The old district-divisions of Quebec, Montreal, and Three Rivers were retained. General Murray, with an executive council, governed the Quebec; General Gage, the Montreal; and Col. Burton, the Three Rivers District. Two other districts, the St. Maurice and the St. Francis, were shortly afterwards set apart. Justice was administered in each district chiefly by military or militia officers, subject to an appeal to the Governor. This system was not popular, and only continued in operation for a short time, until a court of King's Bench and a court of Common Pleas were instituted. The laws and customs of France were, however, followed in matters affecting land.

2. *State of Canada at this Time.*—The population of Canada at this time was about 80,000, including nearly 8,000 Indians. The country, however, had been exhausted by desolating wars, and agriculture and other peaceful arts languished. The failure of the French Government to pay its Canadian creditors the sums due to them, chiefly through the fraud, rapacity, and extravagance of the Intendant Bigot, involved many of these creditors in misery and ruin.

3. *Amelioration in the system of Government discussed.*—In 1766, Governor Murray was recalled, and Gen. (afterwards Sir Guy) Carleton appointed Governor-General.\* In August of that year, Governor Carleton and

---

\* Sir Guy Carleton (Lord Dorchester) was among the most eminent men who have governed Canada. He was born in England in 1725, entered the army and took a prominent part in the siege and capture of Quebec, under Wolfe, in 1759. He was, for his services, promoted to the rank of Brigadier-General, and during the Governor-General's (Murray's) absence from Canada in 1767, he administered the government. Being in England in 1770, he aided in the passage of the Quebec Act of 1771. In 1774 he returned as Governor-General, and successfully resisted the attack of the Americans upon Quebec in 1776. In 1778 he returned to England, and was knighted by the king. In 1782 he succeeded Sir Henry Clinton as Commander-in-chief of the royal forces in America. In 1786 he was created Lord Dorchester for his distinguished services, and from that time until

---

QUESTIONS.—Who succeeded governor Murray? What ameliorations in the system of government were proposed? Give a sketch of Lord Dorchester's career. Mention the steps which were taken to remove any cause of complaint.

Gov. Sir Henry Moore, of New York, met at Lake Champlain, each with a surveyor, to fix the boundary line between their respective provinces. The boundary stone set up in that year was replaced by an iron monument at the time of the Ashburton Treaty, in 1842. During the interval, Major Irving was appointed President of the Province *pro tem*. Much dissatisfaction was, however, felt because of the continued administration of justice and civil affairs solely by military men, and many of the inhabitants left the province. Memorials and complaints on the subject were transmitted to England, and there referred to the law officers of the crown. No thing was done, however, except to direct the Governor-General to issue a commission to inquire into the truth of these complaints. Sir Guy went to England in 1770 to give testimony on Canadian affairs, and did not return until 1774. In the meantime, M. Cramahé was appointed Governor *ad interim*. The evidence taken before the commission was referred to three crown lawyers, who did not report upon it until 1772–73. Two were in favor of the views entertained by the colonists, while the third was opposed to them.

4. *The Quebec Act of 1774*.—As the result of all these discussions, the British ministry resolved to submit to Parliament a conciliatory measure, which was finally passed, entitled a “Bill for reconstructing the government of the Province of Quebec.” This bill provided, among other things, for the “free exercise” of the Roman Catholic religion; for the establishment of a Legislative Council; and for the introduction of the criminal law of

---

1796 (with the exception of two years) he remained in Canada as Governor-General. He was thus connected with Canada for the long period of thirty-six years. During that time he acquired great distinction as a colonial governor by his prudence, firmness, and sagacity. His conciliatory manner towards the French Canadians and towards other parties won for him their love and respect: and when he retired from the government of Canada it was amid the heartfelt regret of all classes of the people. He died in 1808, aged 83.

---

QUESTIONS.—What inquiries were set on foot? What was the result of these inquiries? Mention the principal provisions of the Quebec act of 1774. Was the Quebec act satisfactory?



England into the province; but it declared "that in all matters of controversy, relative to property and civil rights, resort should be had to the laws of Canada as the rule for the decision of the same." Thus, the enjoyment of the religion, and protection under the civil laws, of French Canada were confirmed to the inhabitants by Imperial statute; and a system of local self-government was introduced. The act was distasteful to the British residents, but it gave unmixed satisfaction to the French Canadians; and, at a time when the old English colonies were wavering in their attachment to the British crown, it confirmed the French Canadians in their allegiance to the king.

5. *Efforts of the Disaffected Colonists to Detach the Canadians from England.*—Most of the old English colonies in America had long possessed liberal royal charters, under which they enjoyed the right of almost unlimited self-government. The long continuance of this right, almost unquestioned by the Home Government, had, in many cases, fostered a spirit of ambitious resistance to the legitimate exercise of the power of the Sovereign and of the Imperial Parliament over the colonies, even when it was employed to modify or counteract the hasty or oppressive acts of the local governments. The spirit of opposition had much to do with, and even gave an undue vehemence to, the resistance of the New England colonists to the ill-advised stamp and customs duties acts which were imposed upon the American colonies by the Imperial Parliament. This state of feeling ripened into open revolt against the Sovereign a few years afterwards. The stamp act was passed in 1765, but, owing to the violent agitation which it caused, was repealed in 1766. The customs duties act was passed in 1767, but repealed in 1770, except so far as the duty on tea was concerned. In order to raise a revenue, the East India Company was

---

QUESTIONS — What is said of the English colonies in America? Give an account of the state of ill-feeling in New England at this time and of its evil effects upon the colony. What is said of the famous tea riot in Boston?

allowed, in 1773, to export tea to Boston. On its arrival there, a party, disguised as Indians (some of whom were interested rivals of the East India Company), boarded the ships, seized the tea, and threw it into the harbor. The government therefore shut up the harbor, until the Company should be indemnified for its losses,\* revoked the charter of Massachusetts, and sent troops under General Gage to enforce obedience. In 1774, the Assembly of Massachusetts, by circular, requested a meeting in Philadelphia of representatives from all the colonies to concert measures of resistance. Each of the thirteen old colonies, except Georgia, sent delegates. Canada declined to take any part in the revolt; and although one of the three addresses issued by the insurgent Congress was specially addressed to the Canadians,† they declined to repudiate their formal allegiance to the British crown, especially as that same Congress had denounced the liberality to these very French Canadians of the Quebec Act of 1774, which they regarded as so great a boon.

6. *American Hostile Attacks on Canada.*—The appeal from the insurgents having failed to secure the co-operating sympathy of the Canadians, Congress despatched a twofold expedition in 1775 to secure the British posts in Canada, and to develop the friendly feeling of the inhabitants. One army from Boston, under General Arnold,‡

---

\* "The object of the mother country in imposing a duty of *three pence* per pound on tea imported by the East India Company into America, while it was *twelve pence* per pound in England, was mainly to break up the contraband trade of the colonial merchants with Holland and her possessions." \* \* \* "Some of the merchants [of Boston] had become rich in the traffic, and a considerable part of the large fortune which Hancock [president of the insurgent Congress] inherited from his uncle was thus acquired." \* \* \* "It was fit, then, that Hancock, who \* \* \* was respondent in the Admiralty Courts, in suits of the Crown, to recover nearly half a million of dollars, \* \* \* should be the first to affix his name to the [declaration of independence] which, if made good, would save him from ruin." \* \* \*—*Sabine's American Loyalists*, Vol. I, (Boston, 1865,) pages 8, 9, 13.

† The first of these documents was addressed to King George III, the second to the British people, and the third to the Canadian colonists.

‡ Benedict Arnold after these events returned to his allegiance, and, as

---

QUESTIONS.—What efforts were made by the insurgents to undermine the loyalty of the Canadians? These disloyal overtures having failed what course was next adopted? What is said of Arnold? of Montgomery?



was despatched by way of the Kennebec River against Quebec. The other, under Generals Montgomery\* and Schuyler, marched against Montreal. On its way it surprised and captured the important forts at Ticonderoga and Crown Point, on Lake Champlain, with all their munitions of war; and, in succession, it also took the posts at Isle aux Noix, St. Johns, Chambly, and Sorel. A still more flattering address was then issued by Congress and extensively circulated in Canada.



Walls of Quebec.†

Many people of both British and French origin heartily sympathized with its objects. The Governor-General (Sir Guy Carleton) was much embarrassed by such disloyal sympathy; and, although aided by the clergy and seigneurs, he could scarcely collect a sufficient force to stop the progress of the Americans, to whose victorious standard many British and French Canadians had flocked. Montreal, after a slight resistance, surrendered to the invaders. General Carleton had even to fly in disguise to Quebec. Here he

a royalist general, fought with great bravery in the subsequent campaigns of Virginia and Connecticut. The brave and noble Major John André, who was employed to carry out the arrangements with Arnold for the surrender of West Point to the British General, was taken, while returning to New York, and executed as a spy. The Americans thus saved West Point. Arnold who fled, was branded as a traitor by the revolutionists. Though a brave man, he was unprincipled and rapacious. He went to England after the revolution, but was in New Brunswick in 1786. He afterwards returned to England, where he died in 1801.

\* Gen. Richard Montgomery was born in Ireland in 1737. He served under Wolfe (by whom he was made a lieutenant), at Louisburg and Quebec; but he afterwards left the service of his sovereign and joined the American revolutionists. From his knowledge of the defences of Quebec, he was sent to take it, and also Montreal. Montreal was captured; but he failed to take Quebec, and lost his life in the attempt.

† Explanation of the Engraving:—A, the St. Charles River; B, the St. Lawrence; a, the Wolfe and Montcalm Monument; b, the spot where General Montgomery was killed; c, the place where Colonel Arnold was wounded; f, Durham Terrace. The gates are indicated by name.

QUESTIONS.—Was the invasion of Canada successful? What did General Carleton do in the emergency? Point out the various places in the engraving. Give a sketch of the siege of Quebec by the Americans. Mention the number of men under Sir Guy Carleton. What did Arnold do? Who lost his life?

found many of the inhabitants disposed to surrender the city. These he compelled to leave it, and proceeded at once to organize the loyal militia for its defence.

7. *The Siege of Quebec by the Americans.*—With the exception of Quebec, Canada was now virtually in the hands of the Americans. The capture of this place, therefore, would decide the present fate of the country. Carleton had but 1,600 men, including about 600 militia. Colonel Benedict Arnold, the American commander, had already reached Quebec, and having made an unsuccessful attack on it, retired to await General R. Montgomery. On Gen. Montgomery's arrival, he invested the city, but forebore to attack it until a favorable opportunity presented itself. This occurred on the 31st December. The assault was, however, repulsed. General Montgomery was killed and Colonel Arnold wounded. The Americans withdrew the remainder of their forces, but still maintained the siege until spring. Having, however, lost many men by disease, they were not long able to maintain themselves. They therefore fell back in May, 1776, to Three Rivers, but were vigorously followed by Carleton, who had received reinforcements. He pressed them so closely that he captured their artillery and stores, and changed their retreat into a rout. The remnant of them took refuge at Sorel. About the same time that post, held by the Americans under Major Butterfield, was also obliged to surrender, together with a detachment sent to its relief. In the



Face of the Citadel, Quebec.

---

QUESTIONS.—After the siege of Quebec what did the Americans do? How did General Carleton follow up his success?



meantime, Congress was not idle. It despatched further reinforcements to Canada in June, 1776, under General Sullivan, but without effect, and again issued an animated and characteristic address to the Canadian people. Three special commissioners: Benjamin Franklin, Charles Carroll of Carrollton (who was accompanied by his brother John, afterwards Archbishop Carroll of Baltimore), and Samuel Chase, were despatched to treat with the Canadians. Their embassy signally failed: for the inhabitants had by this time learned by experience to regard the Americans as enemies rather than as friends. Strong efforts were also made by the Americans to detach the Iroquois from the British standard, but without effect. Under the able chieftainship of the brave Joseph Brant,



Thayendanege (Joseph Brant.)

or Thayendanege,\* the Iroquois or Six Nation Indians remained fast and loyal allies of king George III.

8. *Determination of the Americans to Retain Canada.*—In order to dislodge the Americans from Canada, about 8000 British and German troops, which had been promptly sent out from England to reinforce General Carleton's army, arrived in Canada. The campaign was at once vigorously resumed; and the American invading force was soon driven out

---

\* Joseph Brant (Thayendanege), a Mohawk Indian, of pure blood, was born on the banks of the Ohio, in 1742. He received a good education in Connecticut. In the revolutionary war of 1776 he became the ally of the

---

QUESTIONS.—What did the American Congress do? Was the disloyal appeal to the Canadians successful? What is said of the Iroquois? Give a sketch of the chief Thayendanege, or Joseph Brant.

of Canada, and even from the forts of Ticonderoga and Crown Point on Lake Champlain; but, owing to Gen. Burgoyne's\* bad generalship, in following up the enemy, without proper support or guarded lines of retreat, the campaign ended disastrously for the British arms. Burgoyne was compelled to surrender to Gen. Gates at Saratoga, in the State of New York, October, 1777.



General Burgoyne.

### 9. *Progress of Events in Canada.*

—At length, quiet having been restored to the province, Carleton sought to effect various reforms. The council resumed its sittings, and passed several useful measures. In 1778, Sir Guy Carleton returned to England, and was replaced

English; and, as a prominent chief among the Iroquois, he influenced several cantons of the celebrated league to join the British standard. During that war he was chiefly engaged in raids upon the border settlements of New York and Pennsylvania, with John, the son of Sir Wm. Johnson, and Col. Butler. During the revolution, he held a colonel's commission from the King. At the close of the war, he removed to Canada, and obtained from Governor Haldimand, for the Six Nations, the grant of a territory on the Grand River, six miles in width, from its source to its mouth. The town of Brantford, or Brant's ford, on the river, was named after him; as was also the county of Brant, in the same locality, and the township of Thayendanege, on the Bay of Quinté, where a number of the Mohawks had settled. He translated the whole of the Gospel of St. Mark into the Mohawk language; and in many ways exerted himself to promote the temporal and spiritual welfare of his people. He was greatly respected and beloved by them and by the English. He visited England in 1783; and died near Burlington, Ontario, on November 24, 1807, aged 65 years. His remains were removed to the Mohawk village, Grand River, and interred near the church which he had erected there. His son John subsequently led the Mohawks at the victorious battle of Queenston, in October, 1812. Joseph Brant was a noble specimen of a Christian Indian, and did much to alleviate the horrors of Indian warfare during the period of the American revolutionary war.

\* John Burgoyne, a general in the British army, was sent out to America to aid in suppressing the revolt of the thirteen colonies. He was successful at Ticonderoga, but disastrously failed in the rest of his campaign, as General Braddock had done before him, and from similar causes. He afterwards became an M. P., and died in 1792. See Note † on page 79.

---

QUESTIONS.—How many troops were sent out from England? What did General Carleton do with them? How did the campaign against the invaders end? How did General Burgoyne's campaign end? Why did he fail? Give a sketch of his career.



by General Haldimand as Lieutenant-Governor. His *régime* was repressive rather than popular. This course he considered to be necessary, as the times were critical; for the Americans, who were generally successful in the revolutionary contest with England, had both sympathizers and emissaries throughout Canada. General Haldimand remained five years, and was then succeeded by Henry Hamilton, Esq., as *locum tenens*, who in turn was followed by Colonel Hope.

10. *The Independence of the United States.*—The surrender of seven thousand British troops, under General Cornwallis,\* to an allied French and American force of twelve thousand men, at Yorktown, in the State of Virginia, on the 19th of October, 1782, virtually decided the war; and in September, 1783, Great Britain, by treaty, recognized the Independence of her thirteen revolted colonies. Not less than 25,000 loyalists, who had adhered to the royal cause in these colonies, had their property confiscated, and were forced to quit their homes. They themselves were proscribed, and were compelled to seek protection under the British flag in England, the West Indies, Canada, Nova Scotia, and New Bruns-



General Lord Cornwallis

---

\* Charles, Marquis Cornwallis, was born in 1738. He successfully served under the British Generals Howe and Clinton in the first years of the American revolutionary war. He held a separate command in 1780; and after gaining several victories over the Americans, he was at length besieged by them at Yorktown, and after a gallant defence, was compelled to capitulate. He was twice afterwards Governor-General of India, and once Lord-Lieutenant of Ireland. In India, he defeated Tippoo Saib, and in Ireland suppressed the rebellion of 1798. He was a humane, brave, and honorable man. He died in 1805, aged 67 years.

---

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of General Cornwallis. What events occurred during the years 1777 to 1782. What governors succeeded Gen. Carleton? Give an account of the surrender of General Cornwallis at Yorktown. What is said of the Loyalists and of their persecutions?

wick.\* The Iroquois Indians had also to leave their old encampments and hunting grounds, and to accept from the British government a home, which was freely given to them in Upper Canada.

11. *Constitutional Changes.—Clergy Reserves.*—In 1786, Sir Guy Carleton, then Lord Dorchester, returned as Governor-General. The political discussions which had for the previous few years been going on with a view to popularize the public administration, and to introduce representative government, were now revived. Petitions for and against the proposed changes were sent to England; and various schemes for the settlement of the question were, under strong influences, submitted to the British ministry.



William Pitt.

At length, Lord Grenville, the Colonial minister sent to Lord Dorchester, in 1789, the draft of a new constitution for Canada, which proposed to divide the Province of Quebec into Upper and Lower Canada, and to give to each section a Legislative Council and House of Assembly, with a local government of its own. Lord Dorchester opposed the division of the province; but, nevertheless, the bill was introduced into the House of Commons by the younger Pitt.† After much opposition, it was finally passed, in 1791.‡ Thus

---

\*At the peace of 1783, "Massachusetts, Virginia and New York adopted measures of unexcusable severity [towards the Loyalists.] In the latter State such was the violence manifested, that in August, 1783, Sir Guy Carleton wrote to the president of Congress that the Loyalists conceive the *safety* of their *lives* depends on my removing them."—*Sabine's American Loyalists*, 1864; vol. I, pp. 89, 90. (Sabine is an American writer.)

† William Pitt, the second son of the great Lord Chatham, was born in 1759. He entered Parliament in 1781, and in 1783 was appointed Prime Minister by the King. He was one of the most eminent statesmen of Britain. He died in 1806, aged only 47 years.

‡ "It was in a debate on this bill that Fox and Burke severed the ties of friendship which had existed between them for a long period. The scene was one of the most interesting that ever occurred in the House of Commons. Fox, overcome by his emotions, wept aloud."—*Sabine's American Loyalists* (1864), vol. I, pages 92 and 116.

---

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of the proposed changes in the constitution of Canada. What part did William Pitt, Fox and Burke take in the discussion on the subject?



ended the celebrated constitutional act of this year. Representative government, in a modified form, was for the first time introduced into the two Canadas simultaneously, and gave very great satisfaction. In the same year the famous Clergy Reserve Act was passed in England. This Act set apart one seventh of the unsurveyed lands of the Province “for the support of a Protestant Clergy;” and authorized the governor of either province to establish rectories and endow them. This act became afterwards a fruitful source of agitation and discontent in Upper Canada.

12. *Arrival of Protestant Missionaries.*—With the exception of two or three Protestant military chaplains, who had come to Canada immediately after the conquest, little was done to supply the growing want of Protestant missionaries among the British settlers, until between the years 1780–1790. During those ten years, clergymen, ministers, and even laymen, connected with the Churches of England and Scotland, and with the Methodist, Baptist, Congregational and other churches, arrived and labored wherever they could gather together a congregation, or even a few hearers. Many of those ministers were United Empire Loyalists; some were officers and soldiers; but all were self-denying, devoted men, who cheerfully submitted to the privations and discomforts incident to a new and thinly settled country. These good men have long since rested “from their labors, and their works do follow them.” (See Chapter XX.)

13. *Canada in Her Religious Aspects and Influences.*—It is a striking fact that Canada was one of the few countries which was not originally settled by (or for purposes of) conquest. The pursuits of her inhabitants were always peaceful, not warlike. She has always acted on the defensive, and never as the aggressor. At one time her trade was in furs, and afterwards, as now, in timber and grain; but amidst all the “chances and changes” of her history, and the trade contests and internal feuds of her

---

QUESTIONS.—Give particulars of the Clergy Reserve Act. What is said of the arrival of Protestant ministers? What is said of the pioneers of the various churches in Canada? Who were Canada's earliest settlers?

people, the religious culture and training of her inhabitants have not been forgotten. The adherents of the Church of Rome, who were her first settlers, were remarkable for their zeal in sending missionaries far away into the wilderness wherever their explorers, or fur traders, ventured. The emblem of France's sovereignty and the sacred symbol of her faith were always planted side by side. No hardship was too great for her missionaries to endure, and no form of martyrdom or of torture was too terrible or inhuman to induce them to slacken in their devotion, or turn them from their purpose. So, on the advent of the United Empire Loyalists, and the early British settlers, they too carried with them their ardent love for the Bible, and for "the God of their fathers." Rivalling the zeal and devotion of the early French Missionaries, many of them, even down to our own time, spent their lives in unceasing labors and privations, "counting not their lives dear unto them" so that they might carry the word of life and the spirit of consolation to the home of the distant settler, or to the wandering tribes which yet linger in our forests. And God's blessing has rested abundantly upon their labors; for they have increased and multiplied exceedingly. From the three or four Recollet Fathers of 1615,—the apostolic Stuart, "father of the Church in Upper Canada," in 1783,—the ardent soldier Tuffey of the Methodists, and the zealous heralds of the Presbyterian, Baptist and Congregational churches of 1780-90, the number of successors to these devoted men has now reached that of nearly three thousand ministers, and their number is still increasing in all parts of the land.

---

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of Canada in her religious aspects and influences. What characterized the U. E. Loyalists? What is said of the labors of the missionaries?



## CHAPTER VII.

## THE UNITED EMPIRE LOYALISTS OF AMERICA.

## Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Principles, Conduct and Treatment of the U. E. Loyalists.*

1. *Principles of the American Loyalists.*—As the object of the American revolutionists was to destroy the unity of the British Empire, so the object of the American Loyalists was to preserve it. Hence, they took the name of the United Empire Loyalists. The adherents to the royal cause felt that loyalty to the sovereign was their first and highest duty—that it was enjoined upon them by all the influences and associations of national tradition, early teaching, and natural instinct, as well as by the divine authority of God himself, whose injunction in the apostolic precept was as imperative upon them no less to “fear God” than to “honor the king,” and to “be subject unto the higher powers; for there is no power but of God;”—and they felt that “whosoever, therefore, resisteth the power, resisteth the ordinance of God.” Animated by these patriotic and Christian views, they nobly took up arms to maintain them, and never laid them down until they were vanquished.

2. *Conduct and Treatment of the Loyalists.*—The United Empire Loyalists, on the final failure of the royal cause in the thirteen colonies, nobly abandoned their possessions, their homes, and firesides in the United States of America, that they might still enjoy, though as exiles, protection and freedom under the British flag. Their heroic fortitude, under the unparalleled suffering and privations which they and their families endured, in leaving their comfortable homes for a life in the distant wilder-

---

QUESTIONS. Mention the principal subjects of Chapter VII. Who were the United Empire Loyalists? By what principles were they guided in the revolution?

from 200 to 5,500 acres of land in Canada or the other colonies, according to their military rank and services. This liberal grant was, however, no equivalent for the comfort and worldly prosperity which many of the loyalists had freely sacrificed at the call of duty, in the service of their king and country. Some of the more prominent of the loyalists were appointed to offices of emolument. Most of them lived to a good old age, respected and honored by the community.\* Although, in most cases, they suffered incredible hardships in their efforts to reach the maritime British provinces and to penetrate into the interior of Upper Canada, they proved themselves when there to be invaluable pioneers and colonists. By their early labors, their example of thrift and industry, and their sterling loyalty, they have largely contributed to the prosperity and stability of the British American colonies. The race has now passed away; but the early impress which they gave to the institutions of the provinces, and to the character of their descendants, is yet strongly felt among us. Their principles of honor and traditions of loyalty will long remain, it is hoped, to be among those potent historical influences for good which we possess, and which often mould the character and after-life of nations.

---

\* "Nothing in the history [of the U. E. Loyalists] is more remarkable than their longevity. Several lived to enjoy their half-pay upwards of half a century; and so common were the ages of eighty-five, ninety, and even of ninety-five years, that the saying: 'Loyalists half-pay officers never die' was often repeated."—*Sabine's American Loyalists*, 1857, page 63. Col. Joseph Ryerson of Charlottetown, County of Norfolk, U. C. (father of the Rev. Dr. Ryerson, Chief Superintendent of Education), drew his half-pay from the close of the revolutionary war until his death in 1854, at the age of *ninety-four years*, having been 72 years a half-pay officer.

---

QUESTIONS. Give a sketch of their after career in the various colonies. Was anything done for them? What is said of their longevity and of the case of Col. Ryerson? How should the conduct and character of the U. E. Loyalists influence us?



ness, has rendered their memory dear to all British Americans; while the unrelenting severity of the acts for their perpetual banishment and the confiscation of their property, which were passed by the several States which they had left, inflicted deep and unmerited wrongs upon young and old alike, and doomed them to years of privation and hardship in a new, unsettled country. The generous amnesty even of Cromwell under the protectorate, and the no less remarkable "act of oblivion" for political offences in the time of Charles II., must ever remain in striking and chivalrous contrast to the heartless refusal of the victorious "thirteen free and independent States of America" to restore the rights, property and privileges of their conquered fellow-colonists at the close of their successful revolution.\*

3. *Dispersion of the Loyalists.*—Of the 25,000 American colonists, who, at the close of the war, remained true to the British cause, about 10,000 came to Canada, the same number went to Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, and other colonies, and the remainder to England. As an acknowledgment of their eminent services and devoted loyalty, about £3,300,000 sterling were distributed among them as a compensation in part for their losses. Each one of them also received, as a free gift from the Crown,

---

\* The state legislatures, generally, continued in a course of hostile action [to the U. E. Loyalists], and treated the conscientious and the pure and the unprincipled and corrupt, with the same indiscrimination as they had done during the struggle. In some parts of the country, there really appears to have been a *determination* to place these misguided, but then humbled men, *beyond the pale of human sympathy*. In one legislative body, a petition from the banished, praying to be allowed to return to their homes, *was rejected without a division*; and a law was passed which *denied to such as had remained within the State, and to all others who had opposed the revolution, the privilege of voting at elections, or of holding office*. In another State, *all who had sought royal protection* were declared to be *aliens*, and to be *incapable of claiming and holding property* within it, and *their return was forbidden*. Other legislatures refused to repeal such of their [repressive and confiscation] laws as conflicted with the conditions of the treaty of peace."—*Sabine's American Loyalists*, 1857, page 86.

---

QUESTIONS. Sketch the conduct of the Loyalists and their treatment by the conquerors. What does Sabine say of the latter? How does this treatment compare with the amnesties of Cromwell and of Charles II.? Where did the loyalists go after their banishment?

## CHAPTER VIII.

## Summary Sketch of the History of Canada.

## GEOGRAPHICAL INTRODUCTION.

## I. LOWER CANADA.

Lower Canada is about 600 miles in length, from east to west, and 300 in breadth, from north to south.

1. *Noted For.*—Lower Canada is noted for the exploring enterprise of its founders; for its commercial importance, fisheries, mineral wealth, beautiful scenery, and noble rivers.

2. *Boundaries.*—Lower Canada is bounded on the north by Labrador and the Hudson Bay Territory; on the east by Labrador and the Gulf of St. Lawrence; on the south by the Bay of Chaleurs, New Brunswick, and the State of Maine; on the south-east by the States of New Hampshire, Vermont, and New York; and on the south-west by the River Ottawa and Upper Canada.

3. *Physical Features.*—Though not a mountainous country, the scenery of Lower Canada is more picturesque than that of Upper Canada. Its rivers and mountain ridges are also on a grander scale. Fogs frequently prevail in the autumn on its navigable waters. The lower St. Lawrence is enclosed by two mountain-ranges, viz., the Appalachian, on the south-east, running along the peninsula of Gaspé (there known as the Notre Dame Mountains), and extending to Alabama: and the Laurentian, on the north, running from the Gulf of St. Lawrence

---

QUESTIONS.—Give the length and breadth of Lower Canada. For what is it noted? Trace its boundaries. Describe its chief physical features.



to Cape Tournment, near Quebec, and thence extending into the interior north-west of Lake Superior.

4. *The Principal Rivers* are the St. Lawrence, Saguenay, St. Maurice, Ottawa and some large tributaries; the Richelieu, St. Francis, Batiscan, Ste. Anne, and Chaudière.

5. *The Inhabitants*.—The first settlers in Lower Canada were chiefly from the central parts of France; but in the Eastern Townships, the inhabitants are principally of British origin, including descendants of the United Empire Loyalists.

## II. UPPER CANADA.

Upper Canada is about 750 miles in length, from south-east to north-west, and from 200 to 300 miles in width.

6. *Noted For*.—Upper Canada is noted for its great lakes; for its agricultural products, fertile soil, and petroleum-springs.

7. *Boundaries*.—Upper Canada, which presents the appearance of a triangular peninsula, is bounded on the north and east by the Hudson Bay Territory and the river Ottawa; on the south and the south-east by Lake Superior, Georgian Bay, Lakes Ontario and Erie, and the river St. Lawrence; and on the west by the Western Indian Territories, Lakes Superior, Huron, and St. Clair, named by De la Salle (page 54) Ste. Claire, and the rivers St. Clair and Detroit.

8. *Physical Features*.—The surface is gently undulating, rather than mountainous, and is diversified by rivers and lakes. The ridge of high land which enters the province at the Falls of Niagara, extends to Hamilton, and is continued to Owen Sound, thence along the peninsula to Cabot Head, and through the Manitoulin Islands, Lake Huron. The Laurentian Hills run westward from the Thousand Islands (in the St. Lawrence

---

QUESTIONS.—Name the principal rivers of Lower Canada? Who first settled Lower Canada? What is the length and breadth of Upper Canada? Of what shape is it? Trace its boundaries. Sketch its physical features.

near the foot of Lake Ontario), and extend north of Lake Simcoe, forming the coast of Georgian Bay and Lake Huron. The water-sheds of Upper Canada are not in general sharp ridges, but rather level, and often marshy surfaces, on which the streams interlock. A main water-shed separates the waters of the Ottawa from those of the St. Lawrence and its lakes; a minor one divides the streams flowing into Lake Simcoe, Georgian Bay, and Lake Huron, from those flowing into Lakes Erie and Ontario.

9. *The Principal Lakes.*—The magnificent lakes which form the southern and western boundaries of Upper Canada, contain nearly half the fresh water on the globe. Their total length is 1,085 miles, and, exclusive of Lake Michigan, they cover an area of upwards of 70,000 square miles.

Names.	Length in Miles.	Greatest Width in Miles.	Area in Eng. Sq. Miles.	Height in feet above Sea.	Mean Depth in Feet.
Superior.....	355	160	32,000	601	900
Huron and Georgian Bay.....	280	190	25,000	578	700
Ste. Claire.....	20	36	360	571	20
Erie.....	240	80	9,500	566	100
Ontario.....	180	65	6,000	234	500

10. *The Principal Rivers* in Upper Canada are the Ottawa and its tributaries; the Spanish, the French, the Maganétawan, the Muskoka, and the Nottawasaga, falling into Georgian Bay; the Saugeen and the Aux Sables, into Lake Huron, the Sydenham and the Thames into Lake St. Clair or Ste. Claire; the Grand into Lake Erie, through the County of Haldimand; the Trent and the Moira, into the Bay of Quinté, and the Niagara into Lake Ontario.

11. *The Boundary Rivers* between Upper Canada and the United States are the St. Clair, (being the contrac-

---

QUESTIONS.—Mention the two chief water-sheds in Upper Canada. What is said of the size, height above the sea, and depth of the great lakes? Give the names of the principal rivers and boundary rivers of Upper Canada.



tion of Lake Huron near Sarnia,\*) the Detroit, the Niagara, and the St. Lawrence; and between Upper and Lower Canada, the Ottawa.

12. *The Inhabitants*.—Upper Canada was chiefly settled by the United Empire Loyalists of America, and by emigrants from the British Isles and other parts of Europe.

---

## CHAPTER IX.

SKETCH OF BRITISH RULE, SECOND PERIOD: FROM THE SEPARATION OF THE PROVINCES UNTIL THE CLOSE OF THE WAR OF 1811, *i. e.*, FROM 1792 TO 1814.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Parliamentary Government—Slavery—Political Progress*  
—*War of 1812.*

### I. LOWER AND UPPER CANADA.

1. *Parliamentary Government inaugurated*.—In June, 1792, the first parliamentary elections were held in Lower Canada; fifty members were returned. The Legislative Council, appointed by the Crown, consisted of fifteen members. On the 17th of December, the New Legislature was opened by General Alured Clarke, the Lieutenant-Governor, in the absence of Lord Dorchester, who remained in England until 1793. Eight acts were pass-

---

\*Sarnia, where a settlement was formed in 1833, was so named by Sir John Colborne—after Sarnia, the ancient name of the Island of Guernsey, of which Sir John was formerly Lieutenant-Governor.

---

QUESTIONS.—Who originally settled U. Canada? Of what does Chapter XIV treat? Name the principal subjects of it. When were the first elections held in L. Canada? When and by whom was the Legislature opened?

ed by both houses, and the session terminated in May. During the second session five bills were passed. The revenue of Lower Canada this year was only \$25,000. During the third session, that of 1795, accounts of the revenue and expenditure, which now reached \$42,000, were first laid before the Legislature. Of the revenue, Upper Canada was only entitled to one-eighth. Lord Dorchester continued in Canada until 1796. During his administration many useful acts were passed, and general prosperity was enjoyed. Nevertheless symptoms of latent hostility between the French and British races in Lower Canada were now and then apparent; while the remains of sympathy with the American revolutionary agitation of 1776 caused the legislature to pass some stringent precautionary measures so as to ensure public tranquillity.

2. *Settlement of Upper Canada.*—As the western part of Canada was chiefly settled by United Empire Loyalists (to whom the British Government had liberally granted land and subsistence for two years), it was deemed advisable to confer upon these settlers a form of government, similar to that which they had formally enjoyed. In the east, the seigniorial or feudal tenure of lands had prevailed since 1627; but in the west, that of free and common soccage (freehold) was established. In 1788, Lord Dorchester divided what afterwards became Upper Canada into four districts, viz.: Lunenburg, Mecklenburg, Nassau, and Hesse. He had strongly opposed the division of the province into Upper and Lower Canada as unwise and impolitic; but his objections were overruled by the Imperial Government, and the "Constitutional Act of 1791" was passed. In 1792, the Upper Canada Legislature changed the names which had been given to the Districts by the Governor General, into Eastern, Midland, Home, and Western. These districts were afterwards divided, and their number increased; but they were abolished in 1849.

---

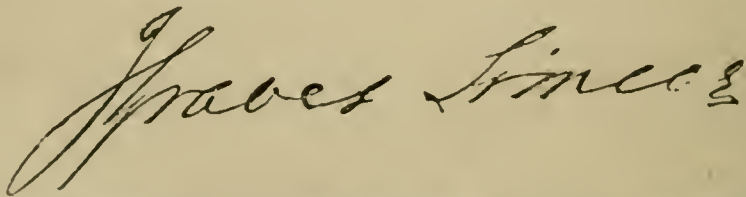
QUESTIONS.—What was done by it? Describe the state of feeling in L. Canada. Why were stringent measures passed? What is said of the divisions of the Province?



3. *The first Upper Canada Parliament* was opened at Newark (Niagara) on the 17th September, 1792, by Lieutenant Governor, Colonel J. G. Simcoe.\* The House of Assembly consisted of only sixteen members, and the Legislative Council of seven. Eight bills were passed; one of which provided for the introduction of the English Civil Law. Trial by jury was also specially introduced, by statute, in that year. The English Criminal Law (though previously introduced into the entire province of Quebec, by Imperial statute), was also (as it stood in 1792) made the law of the land in Upper Canada, by Provincial statute. In 1792 the Duke of Kent (father to the Queen), who, as Commander-in-Chief of the British Forces in America, resided near Halifax, visited Canada, and was entertained by Governor Simcoe at Newark (Niagara).

4. *Slavery Abolished.*—In 1793, slavery was abolished in Upper Canada; and in 1803, Chief Justice Osgoode decided that it was incompatible with the laws of Lower Canada.

5 *The Seat of Government* in Upper Canada was, in 1796, removed from Newark (Niagara), to York (Toronto), by Governor Simcoe. He was anxious that the capi-



\* Lieutenant-Governor John Graves Simcoe, colonel in the army, was born in England in 1752. His military career commenced at nineteen; and he commanded the Queen's Rangers (Hussars) during the American revolutionary war. In 1790 he became a member of the British Parliament; and in 1792, he was appointed first Lieutenant-Governor of Upper Canada. He induced many of the United Empire Loyalists to settle in Upper Canada, and sought in every way to promote the prosperity of the Province. He constructed Yonge Street as a military road from York (Toronto) on Lake Ontario to the lake at the north which now bears his name. He was appointed Governor of St. Domingo in 1794, and a Lieutenant-General in 1798. He died on his return to England, in 1806, aged 54.

QUESTIONS.—By whom was the first U. C. Parliament opened? Sketch his life. Sketch the proceedings of the Upper Canada Legislature. What is said of the Duke of Kent? When was slavery abolished? What is said about the U. Canada seat of government?

tal should be fixed as far as possible from the frontier, and had even proposed London as an eligible site. Lord Dorchester strongly advocated Frontenac (Kingston) as the site of the capital; but the Lieutenant-Governor's opinion in favor of York prevailed.

6. *Eleven years' Comparative Quiet.*—General Prescott\* succeeded Lord Dorchester as Governor-General in Lower Canada in 1796. After remaining three years, he was followed by Sir R. S. Milnes, as Lieutenant-Governor of Lower Canada. On his retiring, in 1805, Hon. Thomas Dunn, senior Legislative Councillor, acted as administrator until 1807. During these eleven years little of public or historical interest occurred in Canada. The local discussions related chiefly to abuses in land-granting by the government, the application of the forfeited Jesuit estates to the purposes of education, and the establishment of a Royal Institution for the promotion of public education in Lower Canada. Efforts were also made to improve the navigation of the lower St. Lawrence, to regulate the currency, extend the postal communication, to ameliorate the prison system, and to promote shipping and commerce.

7. *War with the United States Foreshadowed.*—The relations between England and the United States had been unsatisfactory for some time. This state of things arose out of the persistent claim of the British Government to the *Right of Search* for British naval deserters in American vessels, and also in consequence of orders in Council (prohibiting neutral vessels to trade with France) which England passed in retaliation for Napoleon's famous Milan and Berlin Decrees directed against English trade and commerce. In order to demonstrate the loyal

---

\* Governor Robert Prescott was born in England in 1725. He served in America during the revolutionary war, and afterwards in the West Indies. He was governor of Canada in 1796. He died in 1815, aged 89 years.

---

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of Gen. Prescott. Who, during eleven years, were the successors of Lord Dorchester? Sketch the history of those years. What led to the war of 1812?



feeling of the French Canadians, Governor Dunn, in 1807, called out and organized the militia of Lower Canada; the call was promptly and cordially responded to, so that any apprehensions as to their loyalty in case of war with the Americans, were set at rest. Col. (afterwards Sir) Isaac Brock, the commandant, also strengthened the defences of Quebec.\*

8. *Sir James Craig's Administration.*—In the same year (1807) Sir James Craig arrived as Governor-General.† He remained until 1811, when Mr. Dunn again held the office *pro tem*. At this time the question of excluding the judges from seats in the House of Assembly, was warmly discussed. Sir James indiscreetly interfered with the House and some of its members in this matter, but he was overruled by the Home Government, and at length assented to a bill excluding the judges from the legislature. In order to bring the Government officials more under the control of the Legislature, the House of Assembly, in 1810, proposed to assume the payment of their salaries, and thus render them amenable to Parliament.

\* Major-General Sir Isaac Brock, "the Hero of Upper Canada," was born in the Island of Guernsey, in 1769,—the same year in which Napoleon and Wellington were born. He entered the army in 1785. In 1799, he served under Sir R. Abercromby in Holland, and in 1801, under Lord Nelson, at Copenhagen. In 1802, he came to Canada, and served at Montreal, York (Toronto), Niagara and Quebec. In 1803, he crossed from Toronto to Niagara in an open boat, thence round by Hamilton to intercept deserters. In 1806, to prevent desertions, he suggested the formation of a service battalion. In 1807, such a battalion was sent out (subsequently the Royal Canadian Rifles were embodied for the same purpose). In 1811, he held the office of President of Upper Canada during the absence of Governor Gore in England. On the 16th of August, 1812, he made an attack on Detroit, and caused the American General, Hull, to surrender with 2,500 men. On the 13th October, while gallantly leading his men to drive the Americans from Queenston Heights, he fell early in the action, aged 43.

† Sir James Henry Craig served in the army from his youth. He commanded the British troops at the capture of the Cape of Good Hope in 1795, and served at Naples as commander of the English forces in 1805. He came to Canada as Governor-General in 1807, and returned to England in 1811. He died the same year.

QUESTIONS.—How was Lower Canada tested? Give a sketch of Sir Isaac Brock. What is said of Sir James Craig's administration.

9. *Sir George Prevost's Policy.*—In 1811, Sir George Prevost\* was transferred from Nova Scotia to Canada, as Governor-General; and in the same year the Duke of Manchester, Governor of Jamaica, visited Canada. Sir George entered heartily into the feelings of the Canadian people, and sought to remove all immediate causes of discontent. In the meantime the relations between England and the United States continued to be most unfriendly. At length a decisive act of hostility occurred in the capture, on the 16th May, 1812, by an American frigate of 44 guns, of a British sloop of 18 guns. In view of the impending hostilities the Legislature of Lower Canada passed an Act, with great unanimity, empowering the Governor-General to embody the whole militia-force of the country, endorsed his "army bills," to the extent of \$1,000,000, and voted \$60,000 per annum for five years,† to be expended in maintaining the defence of the Province.

## II. THE WAR OF 1812.

10. *American Declaration of War in 1812.*—In order to excite Congress to a prompt declaration of war against Great Britain, President Madison purchased from a Capt. Henry for \$500,000, a series of confidential letters, which the captain had written (as a political speculation of his own) to Governor Craig's secretary in Canada, on the state of feeling in New England States against the projected war. In the letters a wish on the part of these States to ally themselves with England was alleged. The President laid these letters before Congress, as evidence of the secret machinations of England against the

---

\* Sir George Prevost was born in New York in 1767—his father (a native of Geneva) being a British General there at that time. He distinguished himself in the West Indies in 1803. He was Governor of Dominica in 1805, and was created a baronet in that year for his bravery. He held the office of Lieutenant Governor of Nova Scotia in 1808, and of Canada during the war of 1812. He died in 1817, aged 50 years.

† Colin's "Chronicle of the War of 1812." Montreal, John Lovell, 1864.

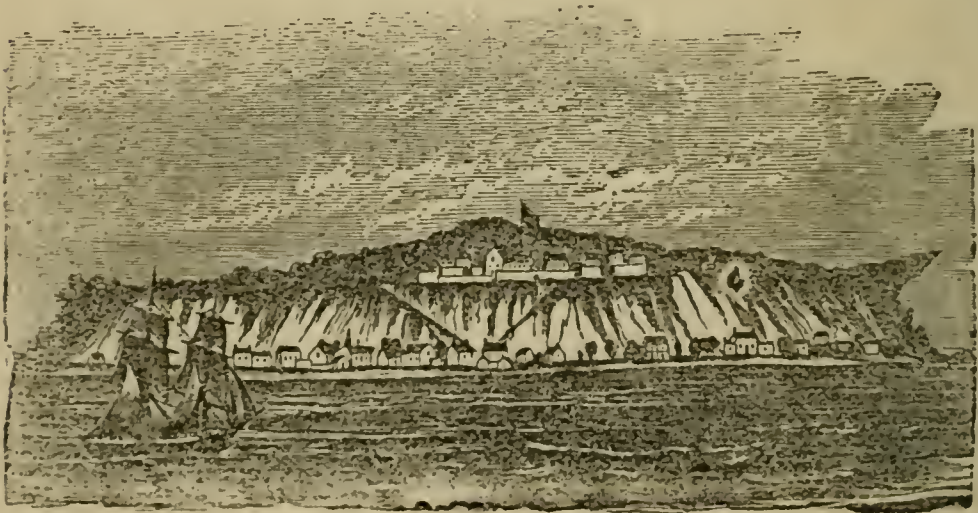
---

QUESTIONS.—What visit was made to Canada while Sir George Prevost was governor? Give a sketch of his career. How did Lower Canada respond to Sir George Prevost's war policy? By what means was Congress induced to declare war against England?



integrity of the Republic. They produced the desired result; and, under the authority of Congress, war was forthwith declared against England by the President on the 18th June. Sir George Prevost set out at once to examine and strengthen the frontier, and to rally the population in defence of the country. With a view to secure the active co-operation of the Roman Catholic clergy, he agreed to the proposition of Bishop Plessis to restore to their church the right as well as the status which it had enjoyed in Lower Canada prior to the conquest.

11. *Opening of the Campaign of 1812.*—At this time Lower Canada contained an estimated population of 200,000, and Upper Canada, 80,000. The campaign opened inauspiciously for the Americans. Besides some minor captures, Captain Roberts (Commandant at the Isle



The Island and Fort of Michilimackinac (Mackinac).

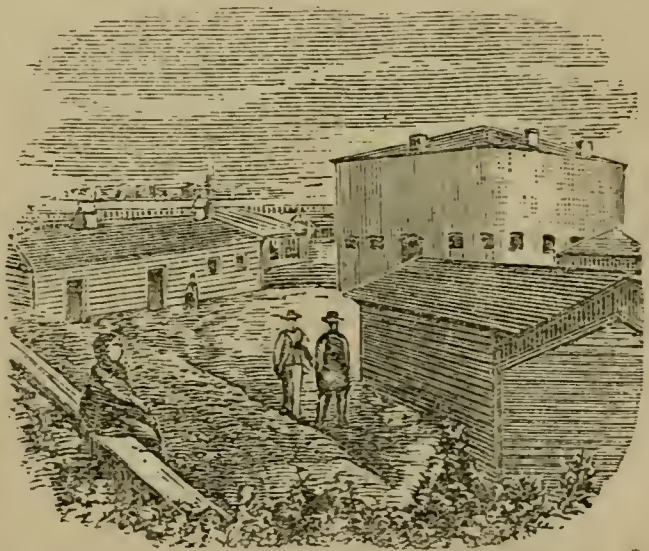
St. Joseph), by direction of General Sir Isaac Brock (then Lieutenant-Governor and Commander of the British forces in Upper Canada,) surprised and, on the 17th July, with great gallantry captured, Fort Michilimackinac, situated on an island of that name, forty miles from St. Joseph, and lying in the straits between Lake Huron and Lake

---

QUESTIONS.—What steps were taken in Canada to meet the emergency? Give the estimated population of the two Canadas about the year 1812. How was the campaign opened?

Michigan. Five days previously, the Americans, having collected an invading army at Detroit, had crossed over to Sandwich and advanced against Fort Malden at Amherstburgh. To compel them to retreat, the British commander despatched a small force across the Detroit river to Mongauga so as to intercept the American supplies from the southwards. This plan succeeded; for on the 7th of August the Americans retreated to Detroit. In the meantime General Brock arrived, and on the 11th August crossed over to Springwell and advanced on Detroit. On the 16th, the American general, Hull, capitulated without firing a gun. Thirty-three pieces of cannon and 2,500 men fell into the hands of the British. Leaving a garrison at Detroit, General Brock returned to the Fort at Niagara. An armistice in the meantime prevented further hostilities until September.\*

12. *Battle of Queenston*.—Early in October, 1812, another American invading army, under General Van Rensselaer, having been collected opposite Queenston, on the Niagara frontier, General Brock prepared promptly and effectually to repel it. On the 11th October, the American troops attempted to cross the Niagara river, but failed for want of boats. On the night of the 12th, however, they succeeded; and on the morning of the 13th, General



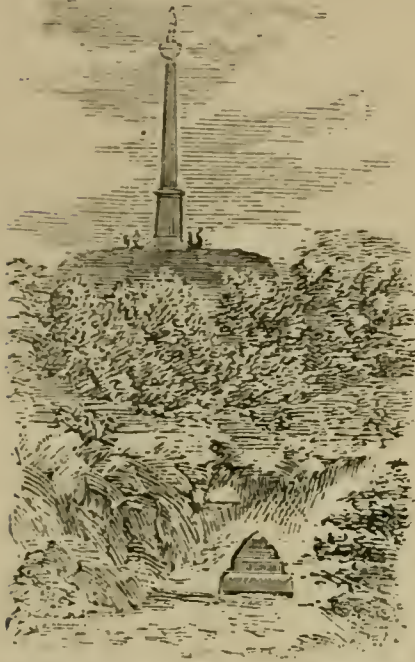
Interior of Fort Missasauga, at Niagara.

\* Sir James C. Smyth's *Précis of the Wars in Canada*; London, 1862.

QUESTIONS.—By what means were Detroit and Michilimackinac captured? Where are they situated? Why were hostilities suspended? Give an account of the battle of Queenston Heights. Who were in command of the British and American forces? What did Gen. Brock do? Name the fort shown above.



Brock, who had hastened up from Niagara (not knowing that the Americans had already effected a landing above



Brock's Monument; also a Cenotaph marking the spot on which he fell.

Queenston), directed the detachment which had been posted on the heights with a battery of two guns, to descend and support the force on the bank, which was endeavoring near the village to dispute the landing of the main body of the invaders. The Americans, who had already landed above Queenston, at once took possession of the heights. Perceiving his mistake, General Brock endeavored to re-take the position which he had thus voluntarily lost; and, in ascending the hill to do so, he was unfortunately struck with a shot and killed, just as he had uttered the words,

"Push on, brave York Volunteers!" A stone now marks the spot where he fell. His aide-de-camp, Colonel Macdonnell, while leading the volunteers, was also shot down. The command then devolved on Gen. Sheaffe,\* who, coming from Niagara by a circuitous route, gallantly carried the heights, and compelled nearly 1,000 of the invaders to lay down their arms, many of whose comrades during the battle were driven over the heights into the river. Upper Canada deeply mourned Sir Isaac Brock, and has twice honored his noble deeds by erecting a monument to his memory.†

\* General Sir Roger H. Sheaffe was born in Boston, Massachusetts, in 1763. He entered the army in 1778, and served in Ireland, Holland, and Canada. For his eminent services at Queenston Heights he was created a Baronet. He died in 1861, aged 88 years.

† The first monument, erected in 1815-6, was blown up by an insurgent during the rebellion troubles of 1837-8. The second was erected in 1859.

QUESTIONS.—How and where did the Americans invade Upper Canada? What steps did Gen. Brock take to prevent them? What mistake did Gen. Brock make? How was it taken advantage of? Who took command on Gen. Brock's death? Sketch his career. What is said of Brock's monument?

13. *Close of the Campaign of 1812.*—In November, the Americans under General Smyth, in attempting to cross the Niagara river above the falls, were driven back with loss. In the same month, Gen. Dearborn pushed forward from Lake Champlain to Lacolle. Col. de Salaberry\* went with a force to meet him; but Dearborn retired after an encounter with a small picket-force under Col. McKay. The capture by the Americans of the Indian village of St. Regis (where the boundary-line touches the St. Lawrence), was counterbalanced by the taking of their fort at Salmon River, near St. Regis. At sea, however, the Americans were more successful. With large ships carrying more guns and men, they captured several British vessels; but on land, the campaign of 1812 ended at all points in the discomfiture of the American invading armies.

14. *Reverses and Successes of the next Campaign.*—In January, 1813, the campaign was opened by a victory gained by Col. Proctor over the American troops at Brownstown, near Detroit. In May and July he also attacked them, but with doubtful success. In April and May, York (Toronto) and Fort George (at Niagara) were taken by the Americans; but Major McDonnell gained important advantages at Ogdensburgh, N. Y. At Stoney Creek, near Hamilton, the American Generals Chandler and Winder were captured in a successful night-sortie, on the



Niagara Frontier.

\*Colonel Charles Michel de Salaberry, C. B., was born at Beauport near Quebec in 1778. He first served in the West Indies, and afterwards in Canada. He defeated and drove back the American invading army at Chateauguay in 1813. For his services he was created a military commander of the Bath, and a medal was struck for his victory at Chateauguay.

QUESTIONS.—Sketch the career of Col. de Salaberry. Give a sketch of the campaign of 1812. Point out each place marked on the map. What occurred at Niagara, &c. ?



5th June, 1813, by Sir John Harvey,\* and their invading army driven back. Mrs. James Secord† (her husband being wounded) walked twenty miles, to Beaver Dams, on the Niagara frontier, on the 24th June, 1813, to apprise Lieut. Fitzgibbon, the British officer, of an expedition sent against him. By skilfully arranging his scanty force



Tecumseh, a Shawansee Chief. §

of two hundred and fifty men, including Indians, Lieut. (afterwards Col.) Fitzgibbon captured, after a slight skirmish, five hundred troops, fifty cavalry and two field-pieces, under Col. Børstler. Lewiston, Buffalo, Forts Schloßer and Black Rock, on the Niagara River, were also successfully attacked and burnt, by direction of Sir Gordon Drummond,‡ in retaliation for the wanton destruction of New-

\* Sir John Harvey was born in England in 1778, and, having served for some time in the army, was sent out as deputy adjutant-general of the forces in Upper Canada. He served with great distinction there, and was appointed Governor of Prince Edward Island in 1836; of New Brunswick in 1837; of Newfoundland in 1841, and of Nova Scotia in 1846.

† While in Canada, in 1860, His Royal Highness the Prince of Wales gave Mrs. Secord a donation of four hundred dollars, in appreciation of the heroic and patriotic act which is related above.

‡ General Sir George Gordon Drummond was born at Quebec, in 1771, while his father held the post there of paymaster-general of the forces in Lower Canada. He served on the staff, and had command of the forces in Lower Canada in 1811: and in 1813 he took command of the forces in Upper Canada, under Sir George Prevost. After a variety of eminent services in Upper Canada, he succeeded Sir George Prevost (after his failure at Plattsburgh) in 1814, as administrator of the Government and as Commander-in-Chief of the forces. He retired from Canada in 1818, and was generally regretted.

§ Tecumseh (or Tecumthe), a noted chief of the Shawansee Indians, was born in 1770. His brother was the celebrated "prophet" of that tribe. In the American war of 1812, he was the warm friend and ally of the British. Although opposed to the civilization of the Indians, he adopted, in some measures, the habits of the whites, and held the rank of Indian

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of Sir John Harvey. Describe the engravings. What is said of Mr. Secord? What is said of the success of the British army, and of reverses? Give a sketch of Tecumseh.

ark (Niagara) and other British posts by the retreating American general. But the tide of victory turned; and the American success on Lake Erie was soon followed by the defeat of the British General Proctor\* and his brave Indian ally, Tecumseh, at Moravian Town, river Thames. Fort George was, however, retaken by General Vincent, and Fort Niagara (as shown in the engraving), opposite to it, was also wrested from the Americans by Colonel Murray during the campaign of 1813.



The American Fort Niagara in 1813.

15. *Campaign of 1813 in Lower Canada.*—To effect a junction with Wilkinson's army, the Americans, under Gen. Hampton, pushed forward on 26th of October, 1813, with 3,500 troops, from Lake Champlain towards Montreal. At the junction of the Outarde and Chateauguay rivers, they encountered 1,000 Canadian militia under Col. de Salaberry, who disputed their advance. By skilful management and great bravery on the part of the Cana-

---

Brigadier in the British army. He, with the western tribes of Indians, had been involved in hostilities with the United States, in 1811; and when war with Great Britain was declared, in 1812, Tecumseh and his warriors co-operated with the British forces. On the 5th October, while retreating from Detroit with General Proctor, the Americans overtook them at Moravian Town (river Thames), and a battle ensued. The allied forces were defeated, and the brave Tecumseh fell in the midst of the fight, aged 44 years. He was a fine-looking Indian, and a man of inflexible principle—honorable and humane.

\* Lieutenant-General Henry A. Proctor was born in Wales in 1787. He took part in Sir Isaac Brock's expedition against General Hull at Detroit, in 1812. In 1813 he defeated General Wilkinson at the river Raisin, near the same city. For his ill-judged retreat up the river Thames, he was tried by court martial and suspended from service for six months; but he afterwards commanded the troops with great spirit in Canada. He was an able officer and highly popular.

---

QUESTIONS.—What is said of Gen. Proctor; and of Sir G. Drummond? What events occurred on Lake Erie, the river Thames, and at Fort Niagara? How did the campaign in Lower Canada progress? Give an account of the battle of Chateauguay. Which party was successful at that battle? Where is Chateauguay situated?





Battle-Ground, River Thames, 1813.

dian officers, the American forces were defeated and compelled to retreat towards Plattsburg.

16. *The Battle of Chrysler's Farm.*—

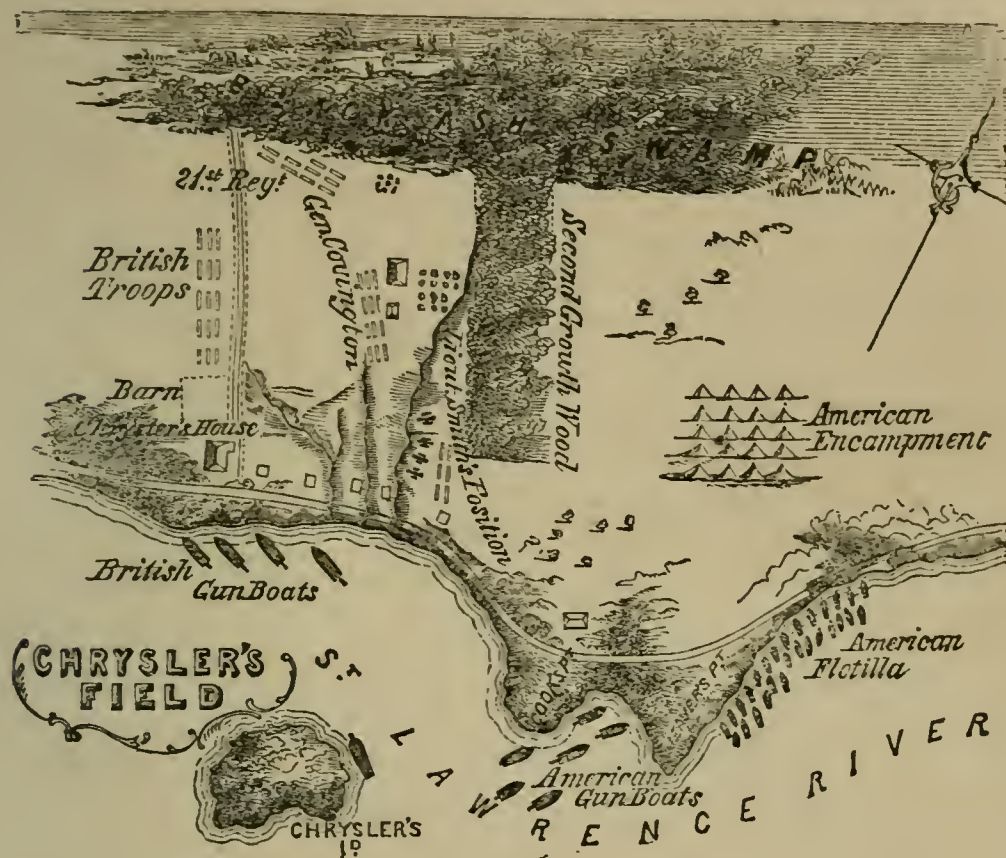
The success of the Americans in Upper Canada had led them to concentrate their forces for a combined attack on Montreal. General Wilkinson,

who had a force of eight thousand men at Sackett's Harbor, was directed to join General Hampton at Montreal, and invest that city with a portion of his troops from Chateaugay. Wilkinson left Sackett's Harbor on the 4th of November, and on his passage down the St. Lawrence, menaced Kingston from Grenadier Island. Being harassed, as he proceeded, by a Canadian force which had been despatched from Kingston to intercept him, Wilkinson resolved, when some distance down the river, to land and disperse it. The enemy were three thousand strong, and the Canadians about 1,000. The Americans were led by Gen. Covington,—and to Lieutenant Smith was entrusted a battery. They landed at Cook's Point, and established themselves at Cook's tavern. At Chrysler's farm, near

---

QUESTIONS. —What is shown in the engraving? What did the American general do? Give an account of the battle of Chrysler's field or farm. Where were the American generals to unite? What was the result?

by, Col. Morrison had the British forces skilfully drawn up to oppose the passage of the Americans. After two hours' hard fighting in an open field on this farm, on the 11th of November, the Americans were compelled to



retire to their boats, with a loss of their general, Covington, and 350 killed and wounded; while the Canadian loss was only about 200. The armies of Hampton and Wilkinson were thus defeated and disheartened by the determined bravery of the British and Canadian forces at Chateauguay and Chrysler's Farm; and this decided them in giving up the contemplated attack on Montreal. These two battles, so gallantly won by inferior numbers, terminated the campaign of 1813. Thus ended the formidable invasion of Lower Canada.

QUESTIONS.—How did the battle of Chrysler's Farm affect the movements of the Americans? Give an account of the relative opposing forces. Point out on the engraving the places marked. How did the contest end? What was the effect of this double defeat?



17. *Campaign of 1814.*—At Lacolle Mill, eight miles from the foot of Lake Champlain, the campaign of 1814 was opened on the 31st March. This post, which was garrisoned by only 500 men, was attacked by Gen. Wilkinson with 5,000 American troops. With the aid of two gun-boats, and two sloops from the Isle-aux-Noix, the Americans were defeated, and driven back to Plattsburgh. After the failure of their invading army at Lacolle, the Americans turned their attention to Upper Canada. But here the British were active. On the 4th of May, a force of 1,200 soldiers and marines were sent to Oswego to destroy the depot there. They were highly successful, and returned to Kingston the next day. It was a source of great mortification that this victory of the British at Oswego was followed by the comparative failure of their attack upon Sackett's Harbour, owing to the irresolution of Sir George Prevost, who ordered a retreat just as victory was achieved. Fort Erie was also lost. This fort, defended by only two hundred men, was captured by the Americans, 4,000 strong, on the 3rd of July, 1814. At Chippewa, on the 5th July, Gen. Riall, with 2,400 troops, gave battle to 4,000 Americans. The British fought bravely; but Riall was compelled to retreat to the Twenty-Mile Creek, on his way to Burlington Heights, near Hamilton. Thence he sent a detachment of 900 to—

18. *Lundy's Lane* (called Bridgewater by the Americans), near Niagara Falls. Here, on the 25th July, this detachment was attacked, and was about retreating by order of General Riall, when General Drummond opportunely arrived from York and encountered the American forces. The battle commenced at 5 p.m., and continued until half-past eleven. Both parties being reinforced, the strife was renewed. At midnight the enemy retired to Chippewa, leaving the British in possession of the field. The Americans lost 1,200 killed, wounded and prisoners;

---

QUESTIONS.—Where was the campaign of 1814 opened? Give a sketch of the battles at Oswego, Sackett's Harbour, and Fort Erie? Give an account of battle Chippewa.

and the British, 900, including General Riall, who was captured. The generals on both sides were wounded. This was the hardest fought battle in the whole campaign.

19. *Close of the War.*—On the 15th August, General Drummond sought to retake Fort Erie, but failed. On the 17th September, the besieged made a sortie, but were driven back. The loss on each side was 600. Drummond's failure, however, was more than compensated by the capture of Prairie du Chien, and the gallant relief and defence of Fort Mackinac. But on Lake Champlain, the British forces suffered defeat; though this disaster was soon retrieved by a decline of American naval power on Lake Erie, and the retirement of their army from Fort Erie on the 5th of November, 1814. The destruction of this fort was the last act in the bloody drama, with the exception of the fatal battle of New Orleans, which was fought on the 8th of January, 1815, and at which the Americans were victorious. This closed the war. By the treaty which was signed at Ghent, on the 24th of December, 1814 (two weeks before the battle of New Orleans was fought), Forts Mackinac and Niagara were given up to the Americans, peace was finally restored to the Province, and our laws and institutions preserved to us by the blessing of Providence and the bravery of our loyal defenders.

20. *Conditions of the Province at the Close of the War.*—Although the war of 1812 lasted only three years, it left Upper and Lower Canada very much exhausted. It however, developed the patriotism and loyalty of the people in the two Provinces in a high degree, and proved how nobly the loyal militia of Canada maintained their country's freedom; for at the close of the war no invader's foot rested within our borders. Party spirit was hushed; and political parties of all shades united in a firm determination to uphold the honor of the country's flag.

---

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the battle of Lundy's Lane or Bridge-water? Give a sketch of the close of the war. Mention the final acts of the contest. What is said of the treaty and of the close of the war?



## CHAPTER X.

SKETCH OF BRITISH RULE, SECOND PERIOD (continued):  
FROM THE CLOSE OF THE WAR OF 1812-14,  
UNTIL THE UNION OF THE PROVINCES.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Governors—Contest between the Government and the Houses of Assembly in Upper and Lower Canada—Canal Policy—Crisis of 1837—Lord Durham's Mission.*

1. *Governors of Upper Canada.*—During the years 1805-1815, there had been frequent changes of governors. The Hon. Francis Gore held office from 1806 until 1811, when he was succeeded as President by Sir Isaac Brock, who fell at Queenston Heights in October, 1812. Sir R. H. Sheaffe held the office *pro tem.*, as President, when he was succeeded by Baron de Rottenburgh, also as President, in 1813. In that year, Sir Gordon Drummond was appointed Lieutenant-Governor, and he succeeded Sir George Prevost as Administrator in Lower Canada, in 1815. During this same time, Sir George

---

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the military and militia force in Canada? Who is commander-in-chief? Mention some of the principal subjects of Chapter X. Who were the governors of Upper Canada from 1805 to 1812?

Murray, Hon. Francis Gore, and Sir F. P. Robinson, succeeded each other as Lieutenant-Governors of Upper Canada. The latter gentleman remained in office until 1817, when Hon. Samuel Hunter was appointed Administrator until the arrival of the new Governor, Sir Peregrine Maitland,\* in 1818.

2. *Political Discussions in Upper and Lower Canada, 1816–22.*—The distracting influences of the war having gradually ceased, political discussions soon occupied public attention. In Lower Canada, a protracted contest arose between the Legislative Assembly and the Executive Government, on the subject of the finances. The Assembly maintained that the right to fix and control the public expenditure was inherent in itself, while the Governor and Legislative Council, being co-ordinate branches of the Legislature, resisted this doctrine, and sought to vest it in themselves. The chief object which the Assembly had in view was, by controlling the expenditure, to prevent or to reform certain abuses which had grown up in the administration of public affairs. It also wished to assert its own authority, as an independent branch of the Legislature, and to prevent the possibility of its being reduced to an inferior position in the state. So tenacious was the Assembly of its rights in this matter, that for years, almost all other questions were made subordinate to this vital one, or they were treated as only forming part of the general issue involved in it. Thus things

---

\* Sir Peregrine Maitland was born in England in 1777. Having distinguished himself at Waterloo, he was appointed Lieutenant-Governor of Upper Canada in 1818; while his father-in-law, the Duke of Richmond, was appointed Governor-General of Lower Canada. On the Duke's sad death from hydrophobia in 1819, Sir Peregrine administered the Government of Lower Canada until the appointment of the Earl of Dalhousie as Governor-General, in 1820. Sir Peregrine was appointed Lieutenant-Governor of Nova Scotia in 1828, and died in 1854, aged 77 years.

---

QUESTIONS.—Mention the names and dates of the Governors of Upper Canada from 1813 to 1818. Give a sketch of Sir Peregrine Maitland. What was the state of political feeling in Lower Canada after the war of 1812?



remained during the administrations of Sir John C. Sherbrooke,\* the Duke of Richmond (who was unfortunately bitten by a fox and died of hydrophobia, while up the Ottawa river in 1819) and the Earl of Dalhousie.† In Upper Canada an almost similar contest arose between the same parties in the state; while the abuses arising out of the system of land-granting, the management of the Post Office Department, and the oligarchical power of the Family Compact (intermarried families of the chief government officials and their immediate adherents), were warmly discussed and denounced. Nevertheless, progress was made in many important directions. Emigration was encouraged; wild lands surveyed; commercial intercourse with other colonies facilitated; banking privileges extended; the system of public improvements (canals, roads, &c.) inaugurated; steamboats were employed to navigate the inland waters; education encouraged, and religious liberty asserted as the inherent right of all religious denominations.

3. *The Clergy Reserve Discussion in Upper and Lower Canada.*—The lands reserved by the Imperial Act of 1791 for the support of a Protestant clergy in Canada, amounted to one-seventh of the province, or nearly 2,500,000 acres in Upper, but only about 1,000,000 acres in Lower Canada—no reserves having been made in that province until 1796. The appropriation of these clergy reserves to the exclusive use of the Church of England

---

\* Sir John Coape Sherbrooke was born in England, and before coming to Canada had acquired some distinction as an officer in the East Indies and the Peninsula, and as Governor of Nova Scotia. He administered the Government of Lower Canada with firmness and tact from 1816 to 1818. He died in 1830.

† George, Earl of Dalhousie, a general in the army, was born in Scotland. He served in Nova Scotia before coming as Governor-General to Canada. He arrived in 1820, and remained nine years. His administration was energetic and firm. He died in 1838.

---

QUESTIONS.—What spirit did the L. C. House of Assembly exhibit? How long did the state of feeling last? Give a sketch of Sir John Sherbrooke and of the Earl of Dalhousie. What is said of the Clergy Reserves?

in Canada gave rise to most exciting and acrimonious political discussions (chiefly in Upper Canada), from 1817 until the final settlement of the question in 1854. In 1827, an ineffectual motion was first made in the Upper Canada House of Assembly, to alienate one-half of the clergy reserve lands to secular purposes. Up to this time, and for two years longer, these lands were entirely in the hands of the government, and no part of the moneys arising out of rents received for them had as yet been paid to any religious body \*—except £427 to the Church of England in 1816. In 1819–20, a Church of England clergy corporation was created in each province to manage these reserves—the corporation, however, was directed to pay the proceeds of the sales of the reserves into the hands of the government, to be by it afterwards appropriated. The payments to the Church of England in Upper Canada recommenced in 1821, and continued until 1854; but none were made to any other religious body until later. In 1822, the Lower Canada House of Assembly voted an address to the king, praying that the various Protestant bodies in Canada be permitted to share in the reserves. In 1823, upon a petition from the Church of Scotland in Canada, an address was also adopted by the Upper Canada House of Assembly, recommending that a portion of the reserves be given to that church. The passage of these addresses was the signal for a general agitation of the question throughout the Provinces—the prevailing feeling being that the reserves should be divided among all the Protestant denominations. In 1826, a similar address was passed, with the additional recommendation that in case it be deemed inexpedient to divide the reserves among all denominations, they “be

---

\* The clergy reserve lands were invariably leased up to 1829, when portions of them were first sold. The rents received for them were for many years insufficient to defray the expenses of surveying and management.

---

QUESTIONS.—Mention the discussions which took place on the Clergy Reserve question. By whom were the lands originally held? What payments were made from the fund? Mention what addresses were passed.



applied to the purposes of education and the general improvement of the Province.”

4. *Upper and Lower Canada from 1823–1828.*—The public discussions in Lower Canada were chiefly directed against a project for the union of the two Provinces, which was proposed by the Imperial Government. The feeling of Upper and Lower Canada being against the measure, it was not persisted in. Notwithstanding the continuance of the demands of the Legislative Assemblies in either Province to control the finances, even to the “stopping of the supplies” (that is, refusing to sanction by vote the payment of moneys necessary to defray the current expenses of the Province), public improvements



Hon. William H. Merritt.

were carried on with spirit. In Lower Canada, large sums were voted by the Legislature for the continuation of the Chambly and Lachine canals; and stock to the amount of \$100,000 was taken by it in the Welland canal, of Upper Canada. In Upper Canada, the Welland canal (projected by the Hon. William H. Merritt)\* was also aided by Parliament. The political discussions of the day were, however, characterized by much personality and bitter feeling. This was espe-

---

\* The Honorable William Hamilton Merritt was the son of a United Empire Loyalist. He served in the war of 1812, and projected the Welland Canal in 1818. Mr. Merritt was a member of the Legislature for many years; President of the Executive Council in 1849; and Chief Commissioner of Public Works in 1851. He died in 1862, aged 69 years.

---

QUESTIONS.—What was the state of feeling, 1823–28? Did the political discussions affect the public improvements? Mention what was done in Upper and Lower C. on this subject.

cially so in regard to the press. In Lower Canada the editor of the *Quebec Spectator* was twice arrested for libel; while in Upper Canada, the editor of the *Colonial Advocate* had his office broken open, and his type thrown into Toronto bay. The perpetrators of this outrage were, however, compelled to pay heavy damages.

5. *Political Party Contests in Canada from 1829 to 1836.*—In 1829, the Governors of Upper and Lower Canada were changed. Sir John Colborne\* replaced Sir Peregrine Maitland, in Upper Canada, and Sir James Kempt† replaced Lord Dalhousie in Lower Canada. In the meantime, political questions were discussed with vehemence; and to thoughtful men, public affairs seemed to be gradually approaching a crisis.‡ The subjects of dispute were in reality few, although the phases of the protracted and ever-varying discussions were numerous, and unfortunately partook largely of personalities.\* Few

\* Sir John Colborne was born in England in 1777: entered the army in 1794. He served in Egypt and Sicily, and also in the Peninsula. He governed Upper Canada during a stormy period, but failed to restore harmony. On his retirement from Upper Canada, in 1836, he was appointed Commander-in-Chief of the forces in Canada, and remained until the suppression of the rebellion in 1839. He held the office of Governor-General for a short time, after Lord Gosford's recall. He was created Baron, Lord Seaton, in 1840, and a Field-Marshal of the Empire in 1860. He died in 1863, aged 86 years.

† Gen. Sir James Kempt was born in Scotland, in 1765. He served with distinction in Holland, Egypt and Spain, and in 1807 was appointed Quarter-Master General for British North America. He was wounded at Waterloo. He was Governor of Nova Scotia from 1820 to 1828, when he was transferred as Governor-General to Lower Canada, where he remained until 1830. He died in 1855, aged 90 years.

‡ To enter into all the details of the political contests of those stormy times, long since settled, would be but to recapitulate the numerous points of dispute between the two great political parties. This would be foreign both to the scope and objects of this history. The utmost we can do, is to glance briefly at the most striking features of public affairs or events of moment, and to deal summarily with the general results, either of long and irritating political discussions, or crises.

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of the Hon. W. H. Merritt. What is said of the personalities of the press? Who were governors from 1829 to 1836? Sketch Sir John Colborne, and Sir James Kent. What is said of the stormy discussion of political questions then?



candid men will deny, however, at this distance of time, that serious faults existed on both sides.

6. *The Two Great Parties in Upper Canada Contrasted.*—The governing party, a self-constituted oligarchy, was intolerant and arbitrary, and while having the reins of power in its hands, would allow no person to question its acts, or to share in its rule. Heedless of the grave responsibilities of its position as the ruling party, it steadily refused to make wise concessions, or to meet the just and reasonable demands of public opinion at the proper time. All its opponents were indiscriminately denounced as revolutionists and republicans. Unfortunately, there was some reason for this censure. The association, if not identification of the reformers with political malcontents, was, for a time, a serious blot on the escutcheon of the liberal party in Upper Canada, and although many distinguished leaders among them held firmly to the great principles of British constitutional freedom, still, many who invariably acted with them, and gave great strength to their party, had but little reverence for anything, either British or monarchical. With them, the republican experiment in the United States, then only sixty years' growth, was an unquestionable success; and by that standard all things political in Upper Canada were to be judged. As the crisis of 1837 drew near, the liberal party showed signs of disintegration. The standard of authority and the political principles of each section of the party being essentially different, the British constitutionalists gradually withdrew from association with the republicans, thus adding new elements of strife and bitterness to the political turmoil of the time.

7 *Political Contests in Lower Canada, 1829–1836.*—In

---

\* It would prejudice the learner's mind to criticise each arbitrary act too severely, or to bear too hardly upon either political party, without giving fuller information than this school history will permit.

---

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the two great political parties of 1830 to 1836? Give a sketch of each. What was the effect of the course pursued by them at the time? What led to the break-up of the liberal party?

Lower Canada, party strife, in many respects, assumed a different aspect from that of Upper Canada. Some features of the political contest between the governing party and the governed in Lower Canada were, however, the same as they were in Upper Canada. Favoritism and exclusiveness marked the conduct of the governing party in each province, and, as a matter of course, they produced the fruits of discontent and resistance in both Provinces.

8. *Elements of Discord in Lower Canada.*—There was a special element of discord in Lower Canada, which gave intensity to all the political discussions there—and that was the hostility of race—French against British, and British against French. As was very natural, the French being largely in the preponderance, looked with great distrust on the intrusive British, whose hereditary national antipathies to the French had been manifested during the continuance of their long contests for the monopoly of trade and territory. And although at the Conquest, and subsequently during the American revolution, the laws, customs, and religion of the French Canadians were, as far as possible, guaranteed and confirmed, still, they looked upon these covenants as only temporary, and maintained that the policy of the British governing party, and their own exclusion from office, violated the spirit if it did not virtually revoke them.

9. *The Lower Canada Ninety-Two Resolutions.*—With such a state of feeling, and under such circumstances, the political discussions in Lower Canada were very bitter for several years. At length they culminated in the passage by the House of Assembly of 92 famous resolutions, prepared chiefly by the Hon. A. N. (late Judge) Morin,\* al-

---

\* The Hon. Auguste Norbert Morin was born near Quebec in 1803. He was admitted to the bar in 1828. He held a seat in the Legislature of Lower Canada and of United Canada. He was also Speaker of the House of Assembly from 1833 to 1841, and member of the government in 1842-3 and 1853-5.

---

QUESTIONS.—What was the state of political feeling in Lower Canada at this time? How did it differ from that in Upper Canada? Mention the chief elements of discord which were at work in Lower Canada.



though nominally by the late Hon. Judge Bedard.\* These resolutions denounced the conduct of public affairs by the government, the exclusion of the French Canadians from office, the party nomination by the Crown of Legislative Councillors, &c. This led to counter-demonstrations and equally strong resolutions on the part of the British portion of the population, so that a fierce war of rival races and political parties was the result. At length, both sides appealed to the British government and Legislature for a settlement of their differences. In the British Parliament warm debates on the subject took place.

10. *Imperial Commission of Inquiry.*—Finally, in 1835, the Imperial Government sent a commission, composed of Lord Gosford† (as Governor-General), Sir Charles Grey, and Sir James Gipps, to inquire into the cause of the alleged grievances in Lower Canada. The report of the Commissioners was laid before the Imperial Parliament, and discussed by it early in 1837. The discussion in the British Parliament was moreover unfavorable to the Lower Canada opposition, and several of its propositions were negatived by large majorities.

11. *Establishment of the Fifty-Seven Rectories.*—In Upper Canada, the strife between the two parties not only continued, but was heightened by the unlooked-for establishment, in 1836, of fifty-seven Church of England Rectories by Sir John Colborne, on the eve of his leaving the Province. The legality of the act was questioned, but without effect, as the statute of 1791 clearly authorized the establishment of rectories. In the meantime, a strong party of liberals in Upper and Lower Canada became

---

\* The Hon. Elzear Bedard, a prominent and active politician until elevated to the Bench, was a native of Lower Canada, and died in 1849.

† The Earl of Gosford was appointed Governor-General of Canada, in 1836, in place of Lord Aylmer. He sought to conciliate opposing parties in Lower Canada, and to remove causes of complaint; but having failed in his mission he was relieved in the government by Sir John Colborne, and returned to England in 1838. He died in 1849.

---

QUESTIONS. Give the principal points of the famous 92 resolutions. How were these resolutions viewed by the two parties; and in England? Sketch Hon. Elzear Bedard; Hon. A. N. Morin; and the Earl of Gosford.

gradually detached from the more extreme opposition. This opposition was led by Hon. L. J. Papineau, in Lower Canada, and by Mr. W. L. Mackenzie,\* in Upper Canada.

12. *The Fatal Crisis Approaching.*—The proceedings of the British Parliament, as arbiter between the contending parties, left the ultra oppositionists no resource but either to recede from their untenable position, or to carry out their threats of armed resistance. In order to avoid any appearance of coercion, no troops were sent out from Britain; but, in case of need, draughts were directed to be made on the garrisons of the adjoining provinces. Meanwhile the spirit of resistance, which had been so fiercely aroused, took active shape: a secret enrolment of the disaffected was made, and the plans of their leaders in Upper and Lower Canada matured. Inflammatory appeals were made to the disaffected of their chiefs, and counter appeals were made to the people by the clergy, and by the leaders of the loyal population. The Governors also issued proclamations of warning.

---

\* William Lyon Mackenzie, Esq., was born in Scotland in 1795, and came to Canada in 1820. In 1824 he published the first number of the *Colonial Advocate* at Niagara. Soon afterwards the paper was removed to Toronto; and, in 1826, having given offence to the ruling party, the office of the paper was broken open and the types thrown into the Bay. Mr. Mackenzie recovered sufficient damages to enable him to continue to publish his paper until 1836. In 1828 he was returned for the first time to the Provincial Parliament for the County of York. Having used some strong expressions in his paper against the ruling party in the House of Assembly, he was expelled from the House. He was re-elected, and again expelled: and this was repeated five times in succession. At length the House refused for three years to issue a writ of election. This proceeding was severely condemned by the Home Government. In the meantime Mr. Mackenzie went to England to represent the grievances of Upper Canada, and was well received by the Colonial Secretary, who requested him to remain to give information. In 1836 he was elected the first Mayor of Toronto. In 1837 he became the leader of the armed insurgents against the Government. Having failed, he went to Navy Island, thence to the United States; and did not return until 1850, when he was again elected to the House of Assembly. He held a seat there until 1858, when he resigned. Though Mr. Mackenzie lived to regret his connection with the rebellion of 1837, he was nevertheless a sincere and honest man in the expression of his views. He died in 1861, much regretted, aged 66 years.

---

QUESTIONS. What unlooked-for act did Sir John Colborne perform? Give a Sketch of Mr. W. L. Mackenzie. What was the effect in Lower Canada of the discussion on the Canada question in England? What steps were taken by the disaffected?



13. *The Rebellion in Lower Canada.*—Before any hostile blow was actually struck, Lord Gosford retired from Lower Canada, and Sir John Colborne from Upper Canada. Sir John was replaced by Sir F. B. Head, and was on his way to England, when he was appointed Commander-in-Chief of the forces in Canada, and Administrator of the government in Lower Canada. He at once armed the volunteers there; while Sir F. B. Head sent to him all the troops he had, and then appealed to the loyalty of the people of Upper Canada for support. At length, on the 7th of November, the first fatal blow was struck. The “Sons of Liberty” attacked the “Doric” volunteers in the streets of Montreal, and compelled them to give way. Both parties now flew to arms in Montreal and its neighborhood; and during the month a series of skirmishes or fights took place between the opposing parties at Chambly, Longueuil, St. Denis, St. Charles, and Point Olivier. Martial law was at once proclaimed in Lower Canada; and a Special Council, invested with Legislative power, convened.

14. *Crisis in Upper Canada.*—No collision had as yet taken place in Upper Canada; but on the 4th of December, 1837, some of Mackenzie’s adherents, having prematurely assembled at Montgomery’s Tavern on Yonge street (four miles from Toronto), resolved to attack the city. On the 5th a flag of truce was sent to parley with them, and to dissuade them from their mad scheme; another was sent on the 6th, refusing their demands; and on the 7th, Sir Francis marched out against them with about 1,000 volunteers. Providentially the contest was short and decisive. Mackenzie, not having completed his plans, had to fight at a disadvantage. He vainly attempted to rally his men, and, at length, had to retreat up Yonge street, whence he afterwards fled to Buffalo. From this place he went to Navy Island (near Niagara Falls), where he col-

---

QUESTIONS. What changes took place among the Governors? Who took command of the forces to Canada? What did Sir F. B. Head do? How was the first fatal blow struck?

lected quite a number of followers, under General Van Rensselaer. On the Canada side the insurgents were confronted by Colonel (afterwards Sir Allan) MacNab, at the head of about 2,500 militia.\* Watching his opportunity, Colonel MacNab sent a small force under Lieut. Drew, R. N., to cut out Mackenzie's supply steamer, the *Caroline*. This they did successfully, and, having set her on fire, sent her over the Falls. Shortly afterwards, artillery was brought to bear upon the Island; and Van Rensselaer, finding his position difficult to maintain, retreated to the American mainland, where his forces soon dispersed. In the meantime, efforts were made along the Western frontier to invade the country from the United States, but, owing to the vigilance of the loyalists, they were unsuccessful. Lount and Matthews, who took part in the Toronto outbreak, were shortly afterwards tried and summarily executed.

15. *Progress of the Rebellion—Lord Durham's Mission.*—In the meantime the Earl of Durham,† who had been appointed Governor-General, and Her Majesty's Lord High Commissioner, to inquire into the affairs of Canada, arrived. Sir Francis B. Head was succeeded by

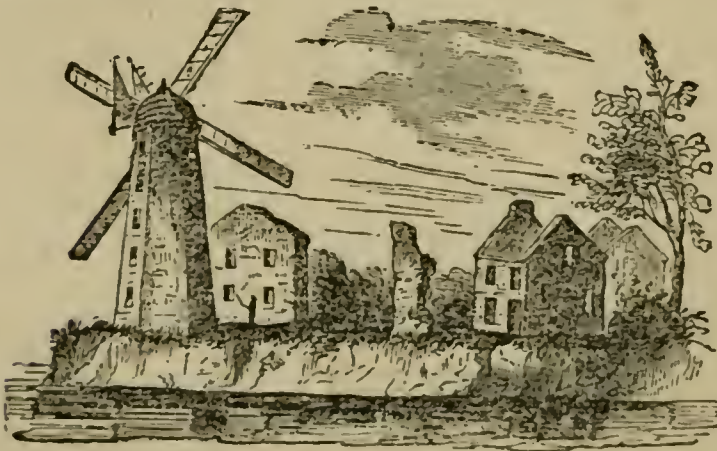
\* The Honorable Sir Allan Napier MacNab was born at Niagara in 1798. He was an officer in the navy, and afterwards in the army, in the war of 1812. After the war, he became a prominent politician, and in 1829 was elected an M. P. P. He was twice Speaker of the House of Assembly and once Speaker of the Legislative Council of Canada. In 1837, he was appointed military chief of the Upper Canada loyalists, in suppressing the insurrection. For his services he was knighted in 1838. He projected the Great Western Railway; was appointed Premier of Canada in 1855, and created a Baronet of the United Kingdom in 1856. He died in 1862, aged 64 years.

† The Right Honorable John George Lambton, Earl of Durham, was born in 1792. In 1813 he was elected to Parliament and was appointed Her Majesty's Lord High Commissioner to Canada, in May, 1838, to inquire into its political grievances. His report upon the political state of the Provinces (which ultimately led to the union of the Canadas, and the introduction of parliamentary, or responsible, government into British America) was published in 1839. He died in 1840, aged 48.

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the collision between the loyalists and the insurgents in U. C. ? Give an account of the Navy Island affair ? Sketch Sir Allen MacNab's career ? Give a sketch of the Earl of Durham.



Sir George Arthur\* as Lieutenant-Governor of Upper Canada. Large reinforcements were also sent to Canada, and the two provinces put in a better state of defence. Shortly after their arrival, Lord Durham, and the several eminent men who accompanied him, set about the objects of their mission. Valuable information was collected, witnesses examined, and inquiries instituted with great vigor. A voluminous report on the state of the country was prepared as the result of these inquiries, and laid before Her Majesty. Among other recommendations made by the Earl, the union of the two Canadas was urged as of paramount importance. A hostile censure, in the House of Lords, on Lord Durham's local administration of the government, however, brought his mission to an abrupt termination, and he returned to England. Sir John Colborne (afterwards Lord Seaton) again became Administrator of the Government in Lower Canada until the appointment of the Right Hon. Charles Poulett Thomson (afterwards Lord Sydenham) as Governor-General.



Windmill Point, near Prescott.

16. *Final Efforts of the Insurgents.*—Various hostile attempts were made, during the year 1838, to invade the Province. The most serious of these took place simultaneously in November, at

---

\* Sir George Arthur was born in 1781. Having been governor of Honduras and of Van Dieman's Land (Tasmania), he was appointed Lieutenant-Governor of Upper Canada at a critical time, in 1838. The efforts made during his administration against the rebellion were successful.

---

QUESTIONS.—What steps were taken to restore quiet? Give a sketch of Sir George Arthur. What was done by the Earl of Durham? Why did he so soon leave the country? What efforts were made by the insurgents?

Napierville, in Lower Canada, and at the Windmill Point, Prescott, on the St. Lawrence, in Upper Canada. That at Napierville was promptly put down by Sir John Colborne in person. At Prescott, the insurgents, under Von Schultz, a refugee Pole, maintained themselves for three days in a stone windmill; but they were at length defeated and captured. The windmill and adjacent buildings still remain blackened and battered ruins, as monuments of the misguided efforts of these men. The principal prisoners taken at both places were tried and executed; others were transported or banished. Further unsuccessful attempts at invasion were made during the winter of 1838-9 at Windsor and Sandwich, near Detroit; but by this time the rebellion had well nigh spent its strength; and having lost all prestige and sympathy, even among the Americans, no invasion of the Province was again attempted. The Glengarry Highland Militia have long been noted for their loyal devotion to their country. In token of their patriotic loyalty during the insurrectionary troubles of 1837-8, the inhabitants (men, women and children) erected, on one of the islands opposite the shore, in Lake St. Francis, an immense cairn of stones,



60 feet high, surmounted by a flag-staff, inserted in the mouth of a cannon which had been placed in an upright position.

17. *Union of the Provinces in 1840.*—On the return of tranquillity, in 1839, the British Government promptly determined to apply such political remedies to the state of the Provinces as would

Glengarry Cairn, Lake St. Francis. prevent the recurrence of

---

QUESTIONS:—Where did the contests with the insurgents take place? What is said of Prescott? How did the rebellion progress in 1838? In what way did the inhabitants of Glengarry evince their loyal feeling?



civil strife or give any reasonable cause of complaint. The Right Hon. C. P. Thompson (Lord Sydenham),\* an eminent merchant, was sent out as Governor-General. He was directed to obtain the concurrence of the inhabitants to a union of the Provinces. The Special Council of Lower Canada agreed to the proposed union (and the assumption by the united province of the large debt of Upper Canada) after a conference with the Governor-General in November, 1839. The Legislature of Upper Canada also agreed to it after two weeks' debate, in December of the same year. Lord Sydenham relieved Sir John Colborne in Lower Canada on his arrival there, 19th October, and Sir George Arthur in Upper Canada, on the 22d of November, 1839. The Act of Union so readily agreed to by both provinces, was drafted by Lord Sydenham and sent home. It was passed by the British Parliament in 1840, and took effect by royal proclamation (issued by Lord Sydenham) on the 10th of February, 1841—a threefold anniversary already memorable in the history of Canada, viz.—*first*: by the Treaty of Utrecht, by which the province was, in 1763, ceded to the British Crown; *secondly*: by the assent of the Sovereign to the Imperial Act of 1838, by which the Constitution of Lower Canada was suspended; and *thirdly*: by the marriage of our most gracious Sovereign the Queen to His Royal Highness Prince Albert of Saxe Coburg and Gotha, in 1839.

18. *Incorporation of Quebec, Montreal and St. Sulpice Seminary.*—The Governor-General returned to Montreal in February, 1840. Among the first things which he did was to issue an ordinance of the Special Council, to re-

---

\* The Right Hon. Charles Poulett Thompson, born in England in 1799; M. P. in 1826; Vice-President of the Board of Trade in 1829; President in 1834. He established the English Schools of design in 1837; appointed Governor-General of Canada in 1839; united the Canadas, and was created Baron Sydenham and Toronto, in 1840; opened the first united parliament at Kingston, in June, 1841; projected a municipal system in Upper Canada in August; and died by reason of a fall from his horse, and was buried in Kingston, in September, 1841, aged only 42 years.

---

QUESTIONS. What steps were taken in 1839 to unite Upper and Lower Canada into one Province? Give a sketch of Lord Sydenham. What was done in Upper and Lower Canada in regard to this projected union?

vive the charters of incorporation of the cities of Quebec and Montreal which had expired during the rebellion. He also, in the same way, granted a charter of incorporation to the Seminary of St. Sulpice [-peace], Montreal. The authorities of this Seminary had, since 1663, been seigniors of the Island of Montreal. This charter enabled the corporation of the Seminary to collect its seigniorial dues, as well as commute them; the latter, however, Lord Sydenham considered most desirable to encourage them to do. The Act of 1854 still further facilitated the commutation of these dues.

19. *Lord Sydenham's Visit to Nova Scotia and New Brunswick.*—In July, the Governor-General went to Nova Scotia and New Brunswick to confer with the local authorities on some political questions of importance. He returned to Canada in about a month, and then made a gratifying tour in Upper and Lower Canada. His reception everywhere throughout the country was most loyal and enthusiastic. It had the effect of softening down many political asperities, and of more firmly uniting all classes of the people together.

---

## CHAPTER XI.

SKETCH OF BRITISH RULE, THIRD PERIOD: FROM THE UNION OF THE PROVINCES IN 1840 UNTIL 1866.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Union of the Provinces—Administration of Lord Sydenham—of Sir Charles Bagot—of Lord Metcalfe—of Lord Elgin—of Sir Edmund Head—of Lord Monck (in part).*

1. *The Act of Union of the Two Canadas.*—The new constitution of United Canada, as embraced in the Act of

---

QUESTIONS. What acts of incorporation were granted? What official visits did Lord Sydenham make? Mention the principal subjects of Chapter XI.



Union, embodied several features not heretofore introduced into colonial constitutions. The most important of these features was *first*: the institution of "responsible government," that is, a government controlled by colonial ministers of the crown, having seats in the Legislature, and responsible to it for their official acts, and for their advice to the Governor-General; and *secondly*: the concession to the House of Assembly of complete control over the revenue in all its branches, and the supervision of the entire expenditure of the country. Thus were the demands of one great party granted; while to meet the views of the other party, guards and checks were then interposed, which since that time have been gradually relaxed.

2. *Lord Sydenham's Administration.*—The year 1841 was an eventful one for Canada. In that year the double system of Lieutenant-governors and Legislatures ceased; and Lord Sydenham became sole representative of the Queen in Canada. The elections to the new legislature took place in March; and the first United Parliament of the Province was opened with imposing ceremonies, at Kingston, Upper Canada, in June, 1841. During that memorable session, the foundation of many of our important civil institutions was laid, especially those relating to the municipal system, popular education, the customs, currency, &c. Another valuable measure was passed relating to the management of the public works of the Province,—which had hitherto been constructed, either by private irresponsible companies, or by contracts issued by separate departments of the government. At Lord Sydenham's suggestion, the numerous acts relating to public improvements were consolidated, and a Board of Public Works, with a cabinet minister at its head, created. In order to enable this board to carry on to completion some newly projected public

---

QUESTIONS. What were the particular features of the Act of Union? How were the views of the two great parties met? For what is the year 1841 chiefly noted? Mention the principal measures which were passed in 1841. How were public improvements promoted?

works, and to consolidate the debt already incurred for them, £1,500,000 sterling was, upon the Governor-General's recommendation, raised in England on the credit of the Province. The session at length terminated in September, under most melancholy circumstances, occasioned by the unexpected death of Lord Sydenham, the Governor-General, who died from the effects of a fall from his horse, on the 19th of the month.

3. *Administration of Sir Charles Bagot,\* 1841-42.*—The regret for the death of Lord Sydenham was universal throughout Canada. By his energy and wisdom he had rescued Canadian politics from the debasement of personalities and strife, and elevated them to the dignity of statesmanship. He had opened up new fields for provincial ambition, in the prosecution of comprehensive schemes of public improvements, public education, finance, trade, and commerce. Under such circumstances his successor, Sir Charles Bagot, arrived. The new Governor-General had, however, many difficulties to contend with. During his administration the smouldering embers of former political strifes were frequently fanned into a flame; and many of the fierce old party rivalries and passions were aroused. He nevertheless acted with great prudence, and called to his councils the chiefs of the reform party, which was then in the ascendant in the legislature. His health having failed, however, he resigned his office, and was about to return to England, when he died at Kingston in May, 1843.

---

\* Sir Charles Bagot was born in England in 1781. He became Under Foreign Secretary of State in 1806. He was successively Ambassador at Paris, Washington, St. Petersburg, The Hague, and Vienna. He became Governor-General of Canada in 1842. During his administration the chiefs of the reform party first held office as ministers of the Crown, under the new system of responsible government. Many useful measures were passed by the Legislature. He died in 1843, much regretted, aged 63.

---

QUESTIONS. What sad event occurred? How did Lord Sydenham improve political discussion? Sketch Sir C. Bagot. Give a sketch of his administration.



4. *Administration of Lord Metcalfe,\** 1843-5.—Sir Charles Metcalfe, who had distinguished himself as Governor in India and in Jamaica, succeeded Sir Chas. Bagot. His endeavor to mitigate what he felt to be the evil to the country of mere party government, and appointments to office, led to a difference between himself and the members of his cabinet, and they resigned. They maintained that appointments to office under the Crown should be made chiefly with a view to strengthen the administration, and upon the advice of ministers responsible to parliament. Sir Charles, on the other hand, maintained that the patronage of the Crown should be dispensed according to merit, irrespective of party objects, and for the sole benefit of the country. Other points of difference arose between the Governor and his cabinet which widened the breach. On an appeal being made to the country, the policy of Sir Charles was sustained by a majority of the electors, and he was shortly afterwards raised to the peerage, as Baron Metcalfe. A cancer in his face soon afterwards compelled him to resign his office and return to England, where, after a painful illness, he died—being the third Governor in succession who fell a victim to disease while in office. In 1844, the Government removed to Montreal.

5. *The Administration of the Earl of Elgin.†*—When

---

\* Sir Charles Metcalfe was born in England in 1785, and, having held the office of governor in India and Jamaica, succeeded Sir Charles Bagot as Governor-General of Canada in 1843. He was firm and conscientious in the discharge of his duty, and in his administration of government. He retired from Canada in 1845, and died in England in 1846, aged 61 years.

† The Right Hon. James, Earl of Elgin and Kincardine, was born in London in 1811. He was elected a member of the Imperial Parliament in 1841; appointed Governor of Jamaica from 1842 to 1846; Governor-General of Canada, from 1847 to 1854; laid the corner-stone of the Upper Canada Normal School, in 1851; effected a treaty of commercial reciprocity with the United States, in 1854; was appointed Envoy extraordinary to China in 1857, and to Japan in 1858. Returning to England he became a member of Lord Palmerston's Administration, as Postmaster General, in 1859. He was again appointed Her Majesty's special commissioner to China in 1860; and, in 1861, he was made Viceroy of India. After a comparatively short life of great public usefulness, he died in northern India, in 1863, universally regretted, aged only 52 years.

---

QUESTIONS. Who succeeded Sir Chas. Bagot? Give a sketch of his administration and of his career. What his said of the death of three governors in Canada in succession? Sketch Lord Elgin's career.

ill health compelled Lord Metcalfe to retire, Gen. Lord Cathcart, Commander of the Forces in British North America, assumed the reins of government as Governor-General, until the arrival of the Earl of Elgin and Kincardine early in 1847. Shortly after Lord Elgin's arrival, the famine and fever, which had spread sad desolation in Ireland and Scotland, drove multitudes to seek a home in Canada. They brought fever and death with them; and for a time pestilence was abroad in the land. Measures were taken to provide for this calamity, and for the large influx of emigrants. These measures, under God's blessing, were successful, and in some degree mitigated the evil. Public attention having for a time been devoted to this subject, was soon again directed to the political state of the country. Lord Elgin, in the discharge of the duties of his high office, exhibited a comprehensiveness of mind and a singleness of purpose which at once gave dignity to his administration, and divested the settlement of the various questions, then agitating the public mind, of much of that party bitterness and strife which had entered so largely into the discussion of most of the political questions of the day. Under his auspices, responsible government was fully carried out, and every reasonable cause of complaint removed. Rarely had a Governor so identified himself with the interests of Canada, or sought so ably and effectually to promote them. The consequence was that contentment, peace, and prosperity became almost universal throughout Canada. A general election took place in 1848, which gave a large preponderance to the reform party in the new House of Assembly. Lord Elgin at once surrounded himself with the chiefs of that party;\*

---

\* As Messrs. Baldwin and Lafontaine were the chiefs of the reform party in this cabinet, we give a short biographical sketch of each:

(1.) The Hon. Robert Baldwin, C.B., was born in Toronto in 1804, and was the son of the late Hon. Dr. William Warren Baldwin. For a length of time Mr. Baldwin was a prominent leader of the liberal party in Upper Canada. He was first elected to the Legislature in 1829: became an

---

QUESTIONS. Who succeeded Lord Metcalfe? Under what circumstances did Lord Elgin arrive in Canada? What was done to avert the scourge from Canada? What is said of Lord Elgin's qualifications? Give a sketch of Messrs. Baldwin and Lafontaine.



and measures of the greatest importance to the country, relative to the finances, post-office, education, and public improvements, were passed by the Legislature. One measure, however, produced a sudden ebullition of party violence, which for a time disturbed the general harmony, and brought disgrace upon the Province. In 1845, a former ministry, under Lord Cathcart's administration, had issued a commission to inquire into the losses sustained during the rebellion by individuals, either through military necessity or from lawlessness, in 1837-8. Their report was but partially acted upon at the time; but so great was the pressure brought to bear upon the government by parties who had suffered these losses, that in 1849 the matter came up before the Governor in Council, and subsequently before the Legislature for final settlement. The measure proposed being thought too indiscriminate and liberal by the party in opposition to the government, warm discussions took place in the House, and an agitation on the subject commenced throughout the country. The measure, however, passed both Houses, and was assented to by Lord Elgin in the Queen's name. No sooner had he done so than he was assailed in the streets of Montreal—(the seat of government having been in that city since 1844)—and as a crowning act of violence, the Houses of Parliament were set fire to, and they, with their valuable library, were almost totally destroyed. Besides the irreparable loss of the library and of the public records, a fatal injury was in-

---

Executive Councillor in 1836; Solicitor-General in 1840; Attorney-General and joint Premier of Canada, in 1842 and 1848. He was, in 1854, created by the Queen a Civil Commander of the Bath, for distinguished public services. He retired from public life in 1851; and died in 1858, aged 54 years.

(2.) The Hon. Sir Louis Hypolite Lafontaine was born in Boucherville, Lower Canada, in 1807. For many years he was an M.P., and a distinguished political leader in Lower Canada. He was appointed Attorney-General and joint Premier of Canada, in 1842 and 1848; Chief Justice of Lower Canada in 1853; and created a Baronet of the United Kingdom, in 1854. He died in 1864, aged 57 years.

---

QUESTIONS. What measures were passed in 1849? What circumstances led to the outburst that year? What loss did the province sustain?

flicted upon the good name and public credit of the country, and popular violence for a time triumphed. The seat of government was at once removed to Toronto. In consequence of this ebullition, Lord Elgin tendered his resignation; but the Queen declined to accept it, and raised him a step in the peerage. After a time tranquillity returned; and with it the unfeigned respect of the great mass of the people for Lord Elgin, for the courage and ability which he had displayed during an eventful crisis in their history. In 1850 a free banking law was passed. In 1851 a uniform postage rate of five cents on each letter transmitted throughout the province was adopted. In the same year, Lord Elgin laid the corner-stone of the Toronto Normal School; and personally throughout the period of his term of office, he promoted the success of the system of Public Instruction in Upper and Lower Canada, founded by the Rev. Dr. Egerton Ryerson and aided in its administration by his graceful eloquence. The system of public education founded by Rev. Dr. Ryerson who was appointed Chief Superintendent in 1844, has been elaborated with great care. In 1853 the members of the House of Assembly were increased from 84 to 130. When Lord Elgin left Canada, in 1854, the Province again enjoyed great peace and prosperity. Before leaving, he procured the passage of the Reciprocity Treaty with the United States—which was, however, abrogated by that country in 1866. During his administration the Great Western and Grand Trunk Railways (projected chiefly by Sir Allan MacNab and the Hon. Mr. Hincks\*), with some branch lines, were commenced. At the Great International

---

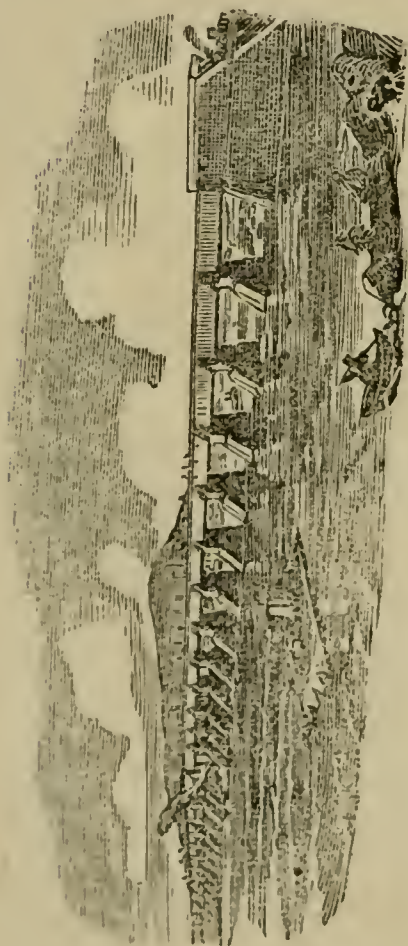
\* The Honorable Francis Hincks, C.B., fifth and youngest son of the late Rev. Dr. Hincks, of Belfast, Ireland. He established the *Toronto Examiner* newspaper in 1839, and the *Montreal Pilot* in 1844. He was an M.P.; Inspector General of Public Accounts, and Premier of Canada; projected the Grand Trunk Railway; and was appointed Governor-in-Chief of the Windward Islands in 1855, and of British Guiana in 1861. In 1862 he was created by the Queen a Civil Commander of the Bath.

---

QUESTIONS. How did Lord Elgin act? How did this outburst affect Lord Elgin? Was he sustained by the Queen? What is said of his promotion of education? Mention the closing acts of his career. Give a sketch of Mr. Hincks' career.



Exhibition, which was held in London in 1851, Canada made a most favorable impression on the British public, both by the variety and extent of the samples which were there shown of her valuable natural resources, and by the mechanical skill and enterprise which were apparent in the manufactured goods which were sent by the Province to that exhibition.



The Victoria Tubular Railway Bridge from St. Lambert.

6. *Administration of Sir Edmund Head, 1854–60.*—

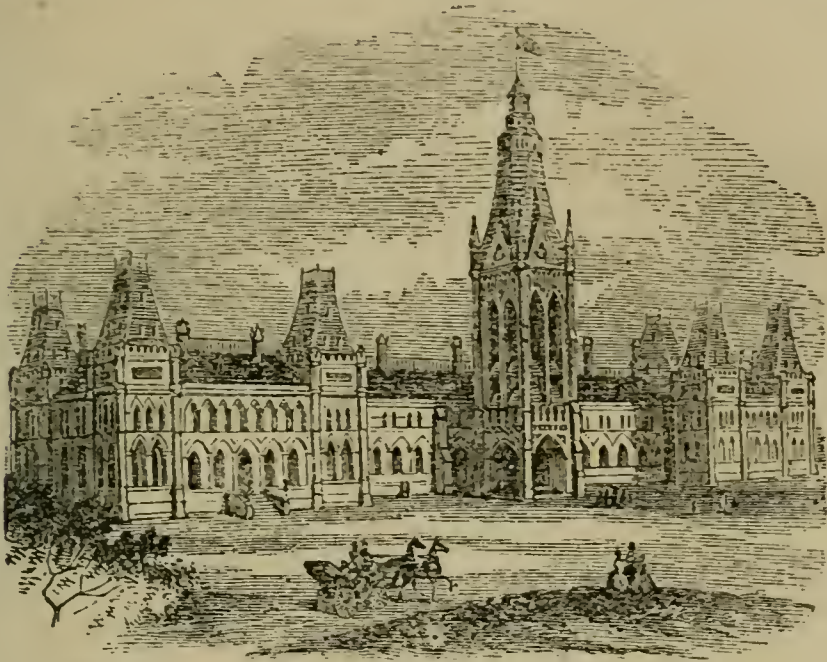
Although not equal to Lord Elgin as an able and popular Governor, the administration of Sir Edmund Head had been a memorable one in Canadian annals. It was noted for the final settlement of the Clergy Reserve question in Upper Canada, and of the Seigniorial Tenure question in Lower Canada; also for the completion of the Grand Trunk Railway to Rivière du Loup, and of its splendid Victoria Bridge over the St. Lawrence river at Montreal. In 1855, 1861 and 1865, Canada again distinguished herself in the Great International Exhibitions held in Paris, London and Dublin. In 1856, the

Legislative Council was made an Elective Chamber. In the same year a Canadian line of ocean steamers, running to Ireland and England, was established; and efforts were made to open up

---

QUESTIONS. Who succeeded Lord Elgin? What is said of his administration? For what was it noted? Mention the principal matters of public interest. What is said of the exhibition?

communication with the Red River Settlement. In 1858 the decimal system of currency, with appropriate silver and copper coins, was introduced. In the same year the 100th Regiment was raised in Canada and sent to England, in addition to large subscriptions and a Legislative grant of \$80,000 towards the Patriotic (Crimean) Fund. In 1858




The Parliament Buildings at Ottawa, Ont.

after repeated attempts to fix upon a permanent seat of government for Canada, the Legislature requested the Queen to select a suitable site. Her Majesty accordingly fixed upon Ottawa; and contracts were soon given out for the erection of the necessary public buildings there. In 1859-60, the statute law of Upper and Lower Canada was consolidated by able Commissioners appointed for that purpose. The handsome buildings for the University of Toronto and University College were also finished and occupied in 1858-60. The closing period of Sir Edmund's administration was rendered still more memorable by a visit to Canada and the other British North

---

QUESTIONS. What occurred from 1855-60? What is said of the events which occurred in 1858-60? Mention the most noted ones.



American provinces, of His Royal Highness the Prince of Wales in 1860. The Prince met with an enthusiastic reception wherever he went; and his presence, as the special representative of the Queen, evoked feelings of the warmest affection and loyalty for Her Majesty. While in Canada the Prince inaugurated the Victoria  Railway Bridge, and laid the corner-stone of the Parliament Buildings at Ottawa. The visit of His Royal Highness the Prince of Wales was, in 1861, followed by a brief one from his brother, Prince Alfred.

7. *Administration of Lord Monck.*—On the retirement of Sir Edmund Head, Lord Viscount Monck was appointed to succeed him. The civil war between the Northern and Southern States of America, which commenced in 1861, had greatly deranged trade. At first, public sympathy in Canada was chiefly enlisted with the North in its contest with the South; but the unwarrantable seizure of the British steamer *Trent* by a Federal admiral, and its justification by his government, as well as the denunciation of England by American public speakers, and writers, first checked the current of sympathy in Canada for the North. As the war progressed, a feeling of respect for the Southerners grew up, on account of their heroic bravery, and the wonderful skill and prowess of their leaders, Generals Lee, “Stonewall” Jackson, and Beauregard, in so long resisting the Northern armies. The admiration for Southern bravery (although it did not weaken the efforts which were made both in England and in these provinces to maintain an attitude of neutrality in the war), was still very much lessened by the attempts made by Southern agents in Canada to compromise her neutrality. To prevent the raids into the States on our borders by Southerners from Canada, volunteers were sent on active service to the frontier. The cowardly assassination of Mr. Lincoln, the American President, at Ford’s Theatre, in

---

QUESTIONS.—How was the Prince of Wales received, and what did he do? Who succeeded Sir E. Head? What is said of the American civil war and the fluctuations of the state of feeling in Canada in regard to it? How did the seizure of the steamer *Trent* affect it?

Washington, on Good Friday night, 1865, evoked heart-felt sympathy in all the British provinces. The day of his funeral was observed as a day of mourning throughout the whole of British America. In 1865, the civil code of Lower Canada (which was commenced in 1860) was completed by Commissioners appointed for that purpose, and reduced to a statutory enactment. During the Fenian excitement in 1865-6, volunteers were again sent to the frontier to prevent the irruption into Canada of the misguided Fenians; and prompt measures were taken by the governments of the various Provinces to meet the emergency should the Fenians venture to desecrate their free soil. About 20,000 volunteers were in a few days enrolled for active service in the Provinces, and nobly did they respond to the call of duty.

8. *Confederation*.—In 1864, the feeling of antagonism in Parliament between Upper and Lower Canada came to a crisis. In the successive elections which had been held during the preceding years, it was found that the hostile majority from either Province in the legislature was increased rather than diminished. A project of confederation, designed to embrace the whole of the provinces of North America, was, therefore, set on foot. By this scheme it was proposed to leave to each Province the management of its own local affairs; while to a general government it was designed to leave matters common to all. This project at length took effect, and an Intercolonial Railway, connecting Ontario, Quebec, New Brunswick, and Nova Scotia, directly with the ocean, was constructed so as to give to these Provinces a winter outlet for their commerce. By degrees, this principle of confederation has been applied to all of the British North American Provinces, except Newfoundland, and a great impetus has been given to internal trade and foreign commerce, and a new era of social and political prosperity has dawned upon these colonies.

---

QUESTIONS. What is said of neutrality; of Mr. Lincoln; of the volunteers and of Confederation? What were the leading features of the proposed confederation? What provinces are connected by the Intercolonial Railway? What are the results of these changes?



9. In 1866, the seat of government was removed to Ottawa, and the new Parliament buildings were occupied. The year 1868 has a sad memory in Canada for the dastardly murder, in Ottawa, by Whalen, of the talented and patriotic Hon. T. D. McGee. His loss was universally deplored. In 1869, the Northwest Territory (including Manitoba, etc.) was transferred to Canada by the Hudson Bay Company for \$1,500,000. In that year the Inter-colonial Railway route was decided upon. A great impetus was also given to local projects, and the free grant lands were thrown open for settlement. Before the year closed Prince Arthur visited the New Dominion. 1870 was memorable for a series of great fires in Quebec, New Brunswick, and the woods of Ontario. Postage on letters to England was this year reduced one-half. In 1871, British Columbia, and in 1873, Prince Edward Island, were incorporated with the Dominion. As in 1841, when the union of Upper and Lower Canada was consummated, so now (1876), when all the Provinces, except Newfoundland, have been admitted into the Confederacy, it is hoped our public men will feel that, as the Dominion of Canada is now a great Confederation, their policy and acts must be dictated by a higher and more dignified national standard than that which has yet been attained in any of the Provinces separately.

10. There have been several matters of public interest which have occurred in the Dominion and its various provinces since Confederation. The principal ones were the settlement, in 1871-73, of the Southern cruiser *Alabama* claims, and the "Fishery Question," between Great Britain and the United States, by a British and American Joint-High Commission, of which Sir John A. Macdonald, then Premier, was a member, on behalf of Canada. The Conferences of this commission resulted in the adoption of the Washington Treaty, the main provisions of which were

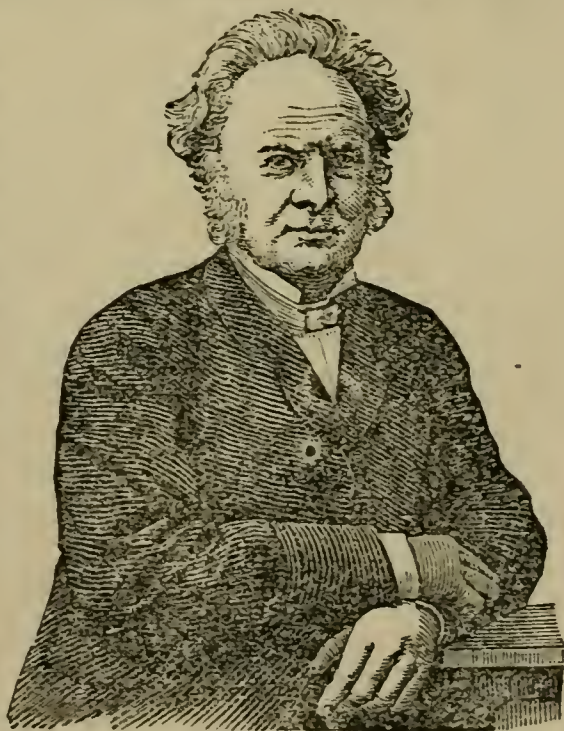
---

QUESTIONS.—What political project has been set on foot in Canada? Explain it. What is this scheme designed to accomplish? How is it expected to influence public prosperity, and the conduct of our public men?

(1.) to submit the *Alabama* claims to arbitrators, to meet at Geneva, Switzerland; (2.) to submit the fishery clauses to the Canadian Common Parliament; (3.) to refer the settlement of the San Juan Island and Haro Strait (British Columbia) boundary dispute to the Emperor of Germany; (4.) to fix the boundary between British Columbia and Alaska (U. S.). Under this treaty, the arbitrators met in 1872, and awarded \$15,500,000 to the United States, and agreed that a commission should sit at Washington to consider individual claims; the Emperor of Germany also decided that San Juan Island belonged to the United States; and the fishery clauses were concurred in by the Canadian Parliament.

The census of the Dominion as then constituted was taken in 1871. The following were the population returns: Ontario, 1,620,851; Quebec, 1,191,516; Nova Scotia, 387,800; and New Brunswick, 285,594. Total, 3,485,761.

In 1876, the Rev. Dr. Ryerson retired on full salary from the office of Chief Superintendent of Education, Ontario. His great success as the founder and administrator of the Ontario System of Education has been the theme of universal commendation. He has been succeeded by the Hon. Adam Crooks, LL.D., Q.C., the first Minister of Education with a seat in the Cabinet.



DR. RYERSON.

---

(For names of Governors of Canada, see *Appendix*.)

---

QUESTIONS.—What important questions were decided in 1871--3? Name the principal points of the Washington treaty. Give the items of the last Dominion census. What is said of the Rev. Dr. Ryerson?



## PART III.

## CHAPTER XII.

SKETCH OF THE MUNICIPAL SYSTEM OF ONTARIO  
AND QUEBEC.*The Municipal Institutions.*

1. *Early Municipal Institutions.*—Municipal corporations were first created in England, by royal charter, as early as 1100. They were, however, only granted as special favors to particular cities and towns, and were then made subject to a variety of tests, oaths, and conditions, which were not done away with until 1828. Nor was it until 1835 that a general law was passed regulating the municipal system of England. A similar law for Ireland was not passed until 1840. Up to that time, there was no municipal system in Canada. Special Acts were passed for incorporating the cities and larger towns, but the rural parts of the country were left destitute of local representative bodies. To the Quarter Sessions, or Boards of Commissioners, was entrusted the management of purely local affairs, while Parliament reserved to itself the care of the roads and bridges, canals, and other important public works.

2. *Introduction of the Municipal System.*—Immediately after the union of the Provinces, in 1840, an Act was passed by the united Legislature, establishing elective Municipal Councils in townships, counties, towns, and cities in Ontario, and in 1847 a similar Act was passed for Quebec, while in the larger villages elective Boards of Police were established. To these bodies were entrusted the general management of all local affairs, the care

---

QUESTIONS. To what does Chap. XXI relate? What is said of the municipal institutions? When were municipal institutions first in Upper and Lower Canada?

of the public highways and bridges, the licensing of taverns, the regulation of markets, the maintenance of jails, &c., with power to assess and collect rates to defray all municipal expenses. In 1855, the municipal system in Ontario and Quebec was greatly extended and improved, and with the further ameliorations which it has since undergone, as the result of an extensive experience in various localities, it is considered one of the most practical and comprehensive municipal systems in the world.

3. *Extent of the Municipalities.* — A village is the smallest of the municipal divisions. To entitle it to an Act of Incorporation, it must contain at least 1,000 inhabitants. A town must contain at least 3,000 inhabitants, and a city 10,000. A township is generally an extent of country from six to ten miles square, intersected generally at right angles by roads, called concession-lines and side-lines. Village and township corporations consist of a reeve, deputy-reeve, and a councillor for each ward or division of the township, or village. Town corporations consist of a mayor and town councillors; and city corporations of a mayor, aldermen, and common-councilmen. Counties embrace various townships and villages. County councils are made up of the reeves and deputy-reeves of townships and villages, who elect their own chairman or warden. The members of township and county councils are entitled to a *per diem* allowance for the time during which they attend the meetings of their respective councils. Councillors for cities, towns, or villages, however, receive no such allowance. All the members of these corporations are elected annually, by the assessed ratepayers, about the beginning of January of each year.

---

QUESTIONS. Give a sketch of these municipal institutions and their powers. Describe the extent and population of the various municipalities.



## PART IV.

## Historical Sketches of the other British Provinces.

## INTRODUCTORY.

1. *Maritime Provinces*.—The maritime provinces of the Dominion of Canada are :

- |                               |                          |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. QUEBEC.                    | 3. NEW BRUNSWICK.        |
| 2. NOVA SCOTIA & CAPE BRETON. | 4. PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND. |
5. ISLAND OF NEWFOUNDLAND, not yet united to Dominion.

2. *Inland Provinces*.—The remaining provinces of the Dominion are :

- |                                |      |  |
|--------------------------------|------|--|
| 6. ONTARIO.                    | 8. { | BRITISH COLUMBIA, including<br>VANCOUVER ISLAND. |
| 7. MANITOBA & N. W. TERRITORY. |      |  |

These possessions stretch from Hudson Bay to the Pacific Ocean, and are ultimately destined to become important portions of the British Empire.

## CHAPTER XIII.

## Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Present Extent and Condition of the Maritime Provinces.*

1. *Acadie divided into two Provinces*.—What are at present the Provinces of Nova Scotia (including Cape Breton) and New Brunswick (with part of the State of Maine) was formerly that outlying portion of New

---

QUESTIONS.—Name the Maritime and Inland Provinces of British North America. Give the principal subjects of Chapter XIII. What is said of Acadie ?

France which was known as Acadie. The boundaries and extent of these outskirts of New France were, to a late date in colonial history, left indefinite; and many a fierce dispute, ending in deadly strife, took place in the efforts which were made by the rival French and English colonists to define these boundaries. Although nominally under French dominion, Acadie was, for a long time after its discovery, too vast a wilderness to be of any practical value either as a place of colonization or of trade, except at some points on the sea-coast. These places were, however, selected for settlement with the usual sagacity of the early French explorers; and they are to this day important central points of trade and commerce in the respective provinces. As the trading-posts of France and England in those early times gradually expanded themselves into colonial settlements, particular places in these settlements, often distant from each other, were selected either for purposes of trade or for military objects. Thus Port Royal (Annapolis), and Ste. Croix,—on the opposite shores of la baie Francaise (Fundy), with undefined boundaries running between them,—from being originally in the same French colony of Acadie, subsequently came to be separate settlements, in the two after-provinces of Nova Scotia and New Brunswick. Physical causes, no less than the absence of easy modes of communication between outlying portions of Acadie, determined no doubt, from time to time, the political divisions of this part of New France.

2. *Communication between the Provinces.*—Until lately the principal mode of communication between the provinces was by water, and this must necessarily continue to be so, as between the islands themselves and the main land. Local railroads exist within the Provinces; but the chief line is the Intercolonial railroad, between Halifax and Quebec, which is 635 miles in length.

---

QUESTIONS.—How were these eastern provinces first settled? At what two places were trading-posts established? What is said of communication between the provinces? Mention the railroads already constructed.



3. *Historical Sketch of the Maritime Provinces.*—The Eastern Maritime Provinces of the Dominion of Canada include Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, and the Islands of Newfoundland and Prince Edward (formerly called St. Jean). Newfoundland is the oldest British colony in America, having been discovered by Sir John Cabot in 1497, and taken possession of, in Queen Elizabeth's name, by Sir Humphrey Gilbert in 1583. Acadia (now Nova Scotia and New Brunswick) was first ceded to Great Britain in 1713, and again, finally, in 1748. Cape Breton Island (formerly called Isle du Cap and Isle Royale), after the capture of the fortress of Louisbourg, its capital, was also ceded to Great Britain in 1748. In 1763 it was annexed to Nova Scotia, and in 1765 formed into a county of that province. In 1770, however, it was separated from Nova Scotia; but in 1820 it was again united to the government of that province, and has so remained up to the present time.

---

## PART V.

### CHAPTER XIV.

#### HISTORY OF NOVA SCOTIA, INCLUDING CAPE BRETON.

(Nova Scotia was so called by the first settlers, who originally came from Scotland; and "Breton" from Brittany,—Breton being the name of an inhabitant of Bretagne, or Brittany, in France.)

Size, one-fourth less than New Brunswick, or equal to a square of 140 m.

#### GEOGRAPHICAL INTRODUCTION.

1. *Noted For.*—2. *Position and Extent.*—3. *Physical Features.*

1. *Noted For.*—Nova Scotia is noted for its coal,

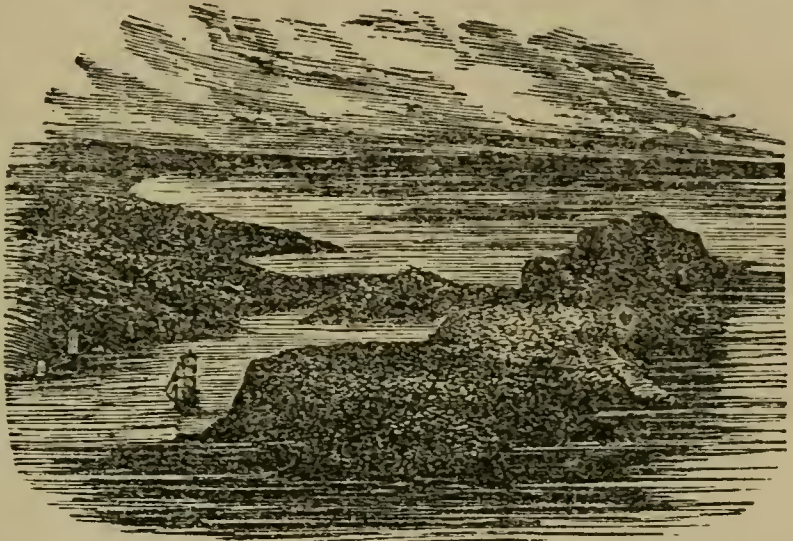
---

QUESTIONS.—Give a historical sketch of the Maritime Provinces. How did Nova Scotia obtain its name? Give its size. For what is it noted?

iron, gold, and other minerals; its fisheries; and its extensive line of sea-coast and good harbors.

2. *Position and Extent.*—The province of Nova Scotia includes the peninsula of Nova Scotia and the Island of Cape Breton, which lie to the south-east of New Brunswick and Prince Edward Island. They have since 1820 been united under one government and legislature.

3. *Physical Features.*—The peninsula of Nova Scotia is somewhat triangular in shape, and is connected with New Brunswick by a short isthmus sixteen miles in length. Its surface is undulating and picturesque, and is dotted over with many small but



Appearance of Nova Scotia, &c., from a Balloon. beautiful lakes. In the interior are several ranges of hills, of which the Co-be-quid are the most important. On the coast, the capes, bays, and harbors are numerous. No part of Nova Scotia is more than thirty miles from the sea. A belt of rugged rocks, averaging 400 feet in height, and from twenty to sixty miles in width, extends along the Atlantic coast from Cape Canso to Cape Sable, and along the Bay of Fundy coast. The Island of Cape Breton is nearly severed in two by Bras d'Or lake and St. Peter's bay. The Island is rich in minerals, well wooded, and fertile. The surface is undulating, and the scenery generally beautiful. Sydney is the capital of the Island.

---

QUESTIONS.—Point out the position and extent of the Province of Nova Scotia. Describe its appearance and physical features. What is peculiar about the coast-line of Nova-Scotia? What is said of Cape Breton Island?



## CHAPTER XV.

## 1. HISTORY OF ACADIE (OR ACADIA), FROM ITS DISCOVERY UNTIL ITS FINAL CESSION TO THE BRITISH CROWN, in 1748.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Discovery—Settlement—Intercolonial Wars—Louisbourg.*

1. *Indian Tribes.*—When first discovered, Nova Scotia was inhabited by a tribe of Indians called the Micmacs, which was scattered over Acadie, from Port Royal (Annapolis) to Miramichi. The Micmacs belong to the great Algonquin family, and were called Souriquois (or salt water men) by the French. They greatly harassed the English colonies during the intercolonial contests; but, in 1761, when the government was firmly established, they finally submitted. In that year they were reduced to 3,000, and are not now more than about half that number.

2. *Discovery.*—Nova Scotia—or Acadie,\* as it was called by the French—originally included New Brunswick, and part of the present state of Maine. The name, however, is now confined to the peninsula alone. It was supposed to have been visited by the Cabots, during their first voyage to America, 1497. As early as 1504–6, some fishermen, from Basque and Bretagne in France, while engaged in the cod-fishery off Newfoundland, reached the promontory of an island to the south-west of that island to which they gave the name of Cape Breton,—after their own people in France. The name was subsequently extended to the whole island. In 1518, Baron

---

\* In regard to this name, see note on page 21.

---

QUESTIONS.—To what does Chapter xv relate? Mention its principal subjects. Name the Indians inhabiting Nova Scotia on its discovery. What was the French name of Nova Scotia? When was it first discovered?

de Lery proposed to found a French settlement in Acadie, but, owing to adverse circumstances, the expedition was abandoned. In 1583, Sir Humphrey Gilbert took formal possession of Newfoundland and the adjacent countries, in the name of England; and, in 1590, Cape Breton was resorted to by the English. In 1598 an attempt was made to colonize Nova Scotia by the French, under Marquis de la Roche. His settlers being convicts, he feared they might be lawless, if set free on the main land. He therefore left forty of them on Sable Island, an inhospitable spot off the coast. Returning from the main land to the island, his ship was driven off the coast by a storm. He then sailed for France. Here, on landing, he was imprisoned by a partisan in the then civil war, and was not able for five years to apprise Henry IV of his unfinished effort in founding the colony. The King, on learning the facts of the case, at once sent Chetodel, de la Roche's pilot, to the island to bring back the convicts to France. On their return, the King, being touched with the miserable condition of the twelve survivors, pardoned them, and gave each of them fifty crowns.

3. *Settlement of Port Royal.*—The traffic in furs having attracted the attention of traders, Sieur Dupont-Gravé,\* and Chauvin, a master-mariner, they succeeded to the rights of the Marquis de la Roche, and dispatched an expedition to the new world. Chauvin having died, Dupont-Gravé induced de Chaste, governor of Dieppe, to join him in the enterprise. With his aid, a company of Rouen merchants was formed; and in 1603 an expedition was fitted out and sent to New France under command of Champlain. On de Chaste's death, Sieur de Monts, governor of Pons, and a Huguenot, succeeded him. On the return of the expedition, Henri IV, being interested

---

\* Or Pontgrave. He was a rich merchant of St. Malo.

---

QUESTIONS.—Who first attempted the settlement of Nova Scotia? What was done by Sir H. Gilbert and by Marquis de la Roche? Describe the settlement of Port Royal. Who was Dupont-Gravé? What did he do?



in the scheme, extended the privileges of the company, and another expedition was sent out in 1604. Part of the expedition went to Tadoussac; but de Monts preferred to stop at Acadie. He landed at a place on the south-east side of the coast, where he found a Frenchman, named Rosignol, trading for furs with the Indians without license. The harbor is now called Liverpool. Having confiscated Rosignol's ship, de Monts coasted in a south-westerly direction; he then turned to the north, and entered a large sheet of water, which he named *La Baie Francaise*.\* Having reached a fine basin on the inland coast, Baron de Poutrincourt, a companion of de Monts, and also a Huguenot, was so pleased with the scenery that he obtained a grant of the place,—the first ever made in America,—which was afterwards confirmed by the King. He at once formed a settlement, which he named Port Royal. De Monts continued his voyage round the bay, and, on the festival of St. John the Baptist, discovered the fine river known to the Indians as *Ou-an-gon-dy*, but which he named St. John. Further on he came to an eligible rocky islet, which he named Ste. Croix, at the mouth of another river. This spot he selected as the place of his new settlement. He and his companions, Champlain, D'Orville, &c., remained here for the winter, and suffered great privations. In the mean time. Poutrincourt set sail for France. Dupont-Gravé returned, however, early next spring with emigrants and supplies. During the winter Champlain coasted along in a pinnace and reached the river Penobscot, which he named *Pento-go-et*, but which had been previously known as *Nu-rem-be-ga*. In June he pursued his explorations along the coast in a small bark, passing in succession the Kennebec river, Saco, the Isle of Shoals, the Merrimac (which he named *Rivière du Guast*), Cape Ann and Cape Cod

---

\* Now Fundy,—from the words *Fond de la Baie*, in old French maps.

---

QUESTIONS.—Describe the voyage of de Monts. What land-grant was first made in America? Mention the settlement of Port Royal and Ste. Croix. By what name was the Bay of Fundy known?

(which he named Cape Blanc.) A harbor full of shoals and sandbars, which they entered, he named Malibar, (but which in 1602 had received the name of Cap Cod from Gosnold, an English mariner). Here an ill-starred dispute with Indians and a failure of provisions, induced them to return to Ste. Croix. Tired of this place and having found no other suitable spot for settlement, de Monts determined to remove the whole colony to Port Royal, which he did without delay. Receiving disagreeable news from home, he left Dupont-Gravé in charge of the colony with Champlain, and at once proceeded to France.

4: *Vicissitudes of Port Royal*.—Under the guidance of the celebrated Lescarbot,\* and of Poutrincourt, who acted as governor, the colonists set about consolidating their little settlement. De Monts and Dupont-Gravé shortly afterwards returned to France; Poutrincourt and Champlain visited Ste. Croix, and coasted as far as Cape Cod; while Lescarbot explored the coast mountains along the Bay of Fundy. Shortly afterwards a marauding party of Dutchmen from the New Netherlands, hearing, through a traitor colonist, of the stores of peltry at Acadie, suddenly appeared, and rifled even the graves in search of beaver-skins. Scarcely had they recovered from this intrusion, when the intrigues of the merchants of St. Malo so far succeeded as virtually to destroy the protection in the fur-traffic which the Rouen company had enjoyed. News soon arrived at Port Royal that the de Monts' charter had been rescinded, and that the company refused any longer to bear the great expenses of the colony. There was, therefore, no alternative but to abandon it; and much to the grief of Membertou (the venerable Indian sagamore of Annapolis, who had been their fast

---

\* Marc Lescarbot was a French lawyer and poet, and a friend of Poutrincourt. He was the author of a History of New France.

---

QUESTIONS.—Where was the colony removed to, and who was left in charge? Who was Lescarbot? Mention the vicissitudes which these original colonies underwent.



friend since their arrival), Poutrincourt, Champlain, Les-carbot, and the other colonists, quitted the settlement in 1607 and returned to France. Nothing daunted, however, and with the help of some Dieppe traders, Poutrincourt collected a number of new colonists, and in 1610 returned to Port Royal. Here he found everything untouched by the natives, as he had gained their confidence and regard. The violent death of Henri IV, shortly afterwards, and the religious dissensions about the colony which followed between the Huguenots and the Jesuits, brought it a second time to the verge of ruin. The Jesuits determined to found a colony of their own, and Pères Biard and Masse left Paris for that purpose. They reached Port Royal in 1611. In 1612, du Thet, another Jesuit father, arrived, but returned soon afterwards. In 1613, La Saussage, a cavalier, Pères Quentin and du Thet reached Port Royal, and took on board the two Jesuit fathers there. Proceeding towards the river Pentagoet. (Penobscot), misty weather compelled La Saussage, the leader, to land at the island of Monts-Desert. Here the colony of St. Sauveur was formed. The English, who claimed all this region, sent Capt. (Sir Samuel) Argall from Virginia to dispossess the French. This was soon done, as the colony was defenceless. Argall returned to Virginia, and, having shown to Sir Thomas Dale,\* the governor, La Saussage's commission, which disclosed the colonizing intentions of the French, Sir Thomas determined to drive them out of Acadie. Three armed vessels under Argall, were sent against Port Royal in 1613. He soon took it, destroyed the settlement, and dispersed the colonists. Thus was Port Royal, after a threefold disaster, for the time totally destroyed; and thus by virtue of Cabot's visit and discovery, and Gilbert's act of posses-

---

\* Sir Thomas Dale succeeded Lord Delaware as governor of Virginia in 1611. Sir Samuel Argall was appointed Deputy-Governor in 1617.

---

QUESTIONS — What did Poutrincourt do? Under what circumstances was the colony of St. Sauveur founded? What befel it? Who was Sir T. Dale? Why did Argall expel the French from Acadie? What is said of it?

sion, Nova Scotia was claimed and conquered by the Virginia colonists, under Sir Samuel Argall, in 1613. This was the first hostile act which occurred between the French and the English on the Continent of America.

5. *English Efforts to Settle Acadie.*—After the capture of Port Royal, the English forces left Acadie, although laying claim to it nominally. By virtue of this claim, King James I, in 1621, granted a patent to Sir William Alexander (afterwards the Earl of Stirling) authorizing him to settle the colony, and for that purpose conveyed to him that part of French Acadie which lay to the eastward of a line drawn from the river Ste. Croix to the St. Lawrence. In the patent the name Acadie was changed to Nova Scotia. In order to promote its settlement, the king founded in 1624 the order of (150) Knights-Baronets of Nova Scotia. Each baronet was to receive 16,000 acres of land, and was required to fit out and send there six settlers, or in default to pay 2,000 marks. In 1625, Charles I renewed the patent, and even included in the grant the whole of the country stretching from the St. Lawrence to California.

6. *Capture from, and Cession to France.*—In 1627, a large fleet of transports, with cannon for Port Royal, was captured by the English in the Gulf of St. Lawrence. Next year, 1628, Port Royal itself was taken by Sir David Kertk, as well as a fleet of French transports in the St. Lawrence. In 1629, Quebec was captured by him, but the French having lost it for a time, still held possession of Cape Sable, as well as other places in the south of Acadie. In 1629–30, Sir William Alexander conveyed part of his territory to Claude (afterwards Sir Claudius) De la Tour, who had been taken prisoner on board the transports, and brought to England, where he married an English lady. About the same time Captain Daniel captured an English fort on Cape Breton. De la

---

QUESTIONS.—Mention the efforts made by the English to settle Acadie. How did Claude de la Tour obtain part of Acadie? What fort did Captain Daniel capture?



Tour was sent to take Acadie from the French ; but his son, who held one of the forts, refused to give it up, although entreated to do so by his father. He then used force to effect its capture, but without effect. Finally De la Tour desisted in his attack, but remained in Acadie in a house erected by his son outside of the fort. At length, in 1632, Charles I, by the treaty of St. Germain-en-Laye through the influence of Cardinal Richelieu, ceded the entire colony to the French. They divided it into three Provinces, and placed them under as many proprietary governors, viz., De Razillai, young De la Tour, and M. Denys. On De Razillai's death at La Hève, in 1635, Charles de Menou, lord of Aunlay and Charnizay, succeeded him ; and soon afterwards Razillai's brothers ceded their rights to him. Charnizay came out from France to take possession of his province, and removed the colony of his predecessor from La Hève, or La Have, to Penobscot, in order to be nearer the rival colonies of New England. In the territorial disputes which now arose between himself and young De la Tour, Louis XIII at length interfered, and in 1638 defined the boundaries of each disputant. To de la Tour was given the whole of Acadie lying west of a line drawn from the centre of the Bay of Fundy to Canseau, to Charnizay was given the country east of that line, including La Hève, Port Royal, Penobscot and the coast of the Etchemins, in New France. De la Tour, who had already erected a fort on the St. John river, refused to accept these boundaries, and Charnizay was ordered to arrest him. De la Tour applied to Governor Winthrop for succor, which was granted. Charnizay was compelled to retreat, and was even pursued by de la Tour as far as Port Royal, where he bravely defended himself. Charnizay objected to this interference, and seized some New English vessels. At length Winthrop, on behalf of New England, offered to

---

QUESTIONS.—What led to the unnatural contest between father and son for the possession of Acadie ? What is said of the three provinces ; of Charnizay ; of de la Tour ; of Louis XIII, and of Governor Winthrop ?

make a friendly treaty, and to enter into trading relations with him. This was done; and the treaty took effect in October, 1644. Charnizay now felt himself relieved from English interference, and, in the absence of young de la Tour, commenced his attack on de la Tour's fort. De la Tour's wife, with great spirit, made an heroic defence. Being betrayed by a Swiss on Easter Day, 1645, Madame de la Tour took refuge in the works, where she resisted Charnizay so bravely that he offered to agree to her terms. Mortified to find her force so small, he dishonorably repudiated his word, and with ineffable cowardice, hung all but one of Madame de la Tour's brave defenders. He even compelled this noble woman, with a halter round her neck, to witness his own breach of faith. She did not long survive this inhuman act, but sank under its infliction, and died soon after. Charnizay was, however, applauded by the King and Queen for the capture of the fort, and was in 1647, appointed Governor of the whole country. He exerted himself to advance the colony, but died in 1650. De la Tour (then engaged in the fur-trade in Hudson Bay), on Charnizay's death, returned to Nova Scotia in 1651, and shortly afterwards married Charnizay's widow. Charnizay's sister also bequeathed her claim to de la Tour. On the strength of this triple title, young de la Tour claimed Nova Scotia as his right.

7. *Cromwell's Expedition against Acadie.* — Under these circumstances, Cardinal Mazarin, who had no confidence in de la Tour, instigated a creditor of Charnizay, named La Borgne, to dispossess him and the other proprietary Governors. M. Denys, of Chedabucto, was surprised; the settlement of La Hève was burnt; and at the time when La Borgne thought he had de la Tour in his power, suddenly a new antagonist appeared upon the scene, who settled the quarrel by driving both disputants

---

QUESTIONS.—What is said of Madame de la Tour? Where was her husband? Describe the disgraceful conduct of Charnizay. What did de la Tour do after Charnizay's death? What expedition was sent against Acadie by Cromwell?



off the field, and possessing himself of the entire colony. Oliver Cromwell, then Lord High Protector of England,\* taking advantage of the strife among the French colonists of Acadie, despatched a force from England, under Colonel Sedgewick, who, in 1654, defeated De la Tour at the St. John, and La Borgne at Port Royal, and re-took the colony. Charnizay's fort at Pentagoet (Pe-



Oliver Cromwell.

nobscot) was also taken without difficulty. De la Tour then went to England to appeal to Cromwell. The English, in the meantime, only held possession of Port Royal, and the French continued their settlements in the interior. In 1656, Cromwell confirmed Charles de la Tour's claim, and granted to him, as well as to Sir Thomas Temple and William Browne, the chief part of Nova Scotia and New Brunswick. Temple and

Browne purchased De la Tour's share, and expended \$80,000 in repairing the defences of the fort. In 1667, England again ceded the colony to France by the treaty of Breda.

8. *New England Expedition.*—The French, having concerted a plan to attack and capture several places in the English colonies, these colonies united in a scheme of vigorous retaliation upon the French settlements. In doing so, Sir Wm. Phipps was sent from Massachusetts, in 1690. He took Port Royal (which he dismantled), Chedabucto,

---

\* Oliver Cromwell was born in England in 1599. He entered Parliament, 1628. While there he acquired great influence with the puritan party, and when the contest against the arbitrary conduct of Charles I arose, he espoused the puritan and parliamentary cause. As a military leader and general of cavalry, he inflicted great loss on the royalist army, and finally, in 1653, reached the position of Lord High Protector of England. He died in 1659, aged 60 years.

---

QUESTIONS.—Sketch the career of Cromwell. How did he settle de la Tour's claim to Nova Scotia? Who purchased de la Tour's share? What led to an attack from New England? Give an account of it.

and L'isle Percée, and then returned to Boston. Villebon, the French governor of Acadie, soon recaptured them; and from his fort at Natchwack, on the St. John, the Indians were supplied with arms to attack the colonists of New England. D'Iberville having arrived from Quebec, it was resolved to effect the reduction of Pemaquid. Having taken an English vessel, Villebon and D'Iberville were joined at Penobscot by Baron de St. Castine\* and two hundred Indians. Fear of the Indians induced the Commandant to capitulate; but that did not save them from the fury of the Indians. Villebon was afterwards taken and sent to Boston. Massachusetts retaliated, and sent Col. Church, who took all the forts in Acadie, with the exception of that of Villebon on the St. John. By the treaty of Ryswick, in 1696, however, England again restored Nova Scotia to France. Massachusetts having soon afterwards suffered from the attacks of the Acadian French, another New England expedition, under Col. Marck, sailed from Nantucket for Port Royal, in 1707, but failed to do more than destroy property of considerable value outside the fort. Again, in 1710, an armament, under General Nicholson, left Boston for Port Royal. He captured the place, and changed its name to Annapolis, in honor of Queen Anne. In 1713, by the treaty of Utrecht, Acadie, including the Island of Canceaux or Canceau (Canso), was finally ceded to England by Louis XIV,† and the name of Nova Scotia confirmed. Cape Breton was ceded to the French.

---

\* Baron de St. Castin, or Castine of Oberon in Berne, was a veteran officer of the Royal Carignan regiment which was sent out to New France. He lived among the Abenakis Indians for twenty years. He married a squaw, and adopted the Indian habits. He had great influence with the Aborigines, and was looked upon as their tutelary deity.

† Louis XIV (de Bourbon), King of France, was born in 1638. He succeeded to the throne with his mother (Anne of Austria) as Queen regent, in 1642. His reign was long and memorable; and his court was noted for its gaiety and extravagance. He died in 1715, aged 77 years.

---

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the Baron St. Castine? What is said of Penobscot; Villebon; Col. Church; the Treaty of Ryswick; Col. Marck; Gen. Nicholson; Queen Anne; Louis XIV (sketch his career); Treaty of Utrecht; Indian hostilities and reprisals?



9. *Indian Hostilities and Reprisals.*—The Indians, who were fast friends of the French, waged a continual predatory war against the English settlements. They refused to be bound by the treaty of Utrecht, as they had not been parties to it. Vaudreuil, the Governor of New France, encouraged them in this view and declared that they were not mentioned in the treaty, but that they were an independent people. In 1720 they attacked an English fishing station at Canceau, killed some of the settlers, and destroyed property to the amount of \$100,000. They also boarded ships and plundered them, and even attacked the fort at Annapolis. At length an expedition was sent from Massachusetts up the Kennebec against their principal village at Nor-ridge-wo-ack. The village was destroyed, and many of the Indians were killed, as well as their missionary, father Rasles, or Rallé, who had been forty years among them, but who had been accused of instigating them against the English.

10. *First Capture of Louisbourg.*—Cape Breton, called Isle du Cape by Verrazzani, and Isle Royale by the French, was, although frequented by French fishermen, not taken possession of by the French government until 1714, when Gen. Nicholson was appointed Governor of Nova Scotia. He was in 1719 succeeded by Governor Philips, who received instructions to form a Council of the principal inhabitants, until a House of Assembly could be elected. In the meantime, he was directed to regulate himself by instructions from the Governor of Virginia. Having lost Nova Scotia, the French turned their attention to this island as a great fishing-station, and in 1720 commenced the fortifications of Louisbourg. These were completed at a cost of \$5,500,000. From this stronghold the French harassed the English settlements of Nova Scotia and New England. At length

---

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the Nova Scotia Indians; of Annapolis; of father Rallé? Trace the chief events leading to the first capture of Louisbourg. What did the fortifications cost?

France declared war against England, in 1744. Louisbourg being a strong naval arsenal, French privateers against the fisheries of Nova Scotia and the commerce of New England were fitted out and took refuges there. Du Quesnel, the Governor of Cape Breton, captured the garrison on Canceau island, and burned the house there. Unsuccessful attacks were also made upon Annapolis and Placentia (Newfoundland). This led to active measures against Cape Breton; and in 1745, Shirley,\* the Governor of Massachusetts, proposed the capture of Louisbourg, but he only carried the measure in the Legislature by a majority of one vote. The colonies of Massachusetts, New Hampshire, and Connecticut joined and furnished troops and transports; Clinton, the Governor of New York, sent artillery, and Pennsylvania, provisions. The colonies of Rhode Island and New York did nothing until after the capture of Cape Breton. The command of the expedition (4,000 strong), was entrusted to General Pepperell. The celebrated Whitfield gave as a motto for the flag of the expedition, the words "*Nil desperandum Christo duce.*" Colonial cruisers were also sent to watch Louisbourg. At Canceau, the rendezvous, they were joined by some English ships, under the command of Admiral Sir Peter Warren (uncle of Sir William Johnson), with 800 men. They reached Chapeau Rouge (contracted to Gabarus [roose]) Bay on the 9th May, and landed to the rear of the town. Their encampment extended in a curved line, outside the fortress. Col. Vaughan, of New Hampshire, an active and intrepid

---

\* General William Shirley, an English lawyer, emigrated to Massachusetts in 1733. He was appointed royal governor in 1741, and remained until 1756, when he was succeeded in that office by General Abercrombie. In 1745 he took part in the expedition against Niagara; and in 1755 projected the scheme for the capture of Louisbourg. He was sent to Paris as a boundary commissioner under the treaty of Aix la Chapelle. He was a most able officer. He died in Massachusetts in 1771.

---

QUESTIONS.—What did du Quesnel do? Give a sketch of Gen. William Shirley. What is said of Sir William Pepperell; Whitfield; Sir P. Warren; Col. Vaughan? Give an account of the siege of Louisbourg. Mention how it was conducted.



officer, soon captured the outposts, and with only thirteen men, surprised the Royal battery, taking 400 men prisoners of war. (See Engraving.) Admiral Warren also captured the *Vigilante*, a 74-gun ship, with 500 men, money, and military stores. To reach the fort, cannon had to be dragged on sledges across the marsh, and, on the 21st of May, the siege was commenced. Other ships soon afterwards arrived, and it was then decided to attack the place. But, despairing of a successful resistance, Duchambeau, the French Governor, capitulated on the 16th of June, 1745, and the troops in the garrison were allowed to march out with all the honors of war. The stores and prizes captured amounted to \$500,000. The Island of St. Jean (now Prince Edward) was also



Capture of Louisbourg in 1745.\*

at the same time claimed by the victors. To mark his sense of the importance of the capture, the King rewarded Admiral Warren, Governor Shirley and Wentworth,

\* EXPLANATION OF THE UPPER PART OF THE MAP.—*a*, Glacis, or extreme outside slope of the defences; *b*, Banquette, or step, upon which the soldiers stand to fire over the parapet (*f*); *c*, Covered way into the fort, under the banquette; *d*, Counterscarp, a bank or wall outside the ditch (*e*); *e*, The ditch or trench; *f*, The parapet, or protection for men and guns inside; *g*, The inner banquette; *h*, Rampart, or most solid embankments of the fort; *i*, Talus, or last slope inside the fort.

QUESTIONS.—Point out in the engraving the position of the opposing forces. Explain the principal terms relating to the upper part of the sketch? How were the victors rewarded? What did the French do to retake it?

and conferred upon Gen. Pepperell a baronetcy. In 1746, the Duke d'Anville was sent with a French fleet to retake the Island, as well as Annapolis, Boston, and other New England cities. De Ramzay with French Indians and Canadians, was prepared to co-operate with him against Annapolis. When it was known that d'Anville was upon the coasts, the English colonists assembled in the churches, and prayed fervently that the impending invasion might be prevented. Their prayers were heard; for storms and disease wasted his forces and the enterprise was abandoned. De Ramzay, however, maintained himself against the English colonists who were sent to dislodge him from Annapolis. The duke died of chagrin; and Jonquière, the Governor of Canada, being on board, became his successor. He insisted that D'Estournelle, the vice admiral, should prosecute the enterprise; but Estournelle refused, and put an end to his life in despair. In 1748, the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle restored Cape Breton to the French, against the wish of the New England captors (whose expenses, of upwards of a million of dollars, were, however, repaid by England in 1749); but the same treaty confirmed the cession of Nova Scotia to the British Crown.

---

## CHAPTER XVI.

HISTORY OF NOVA SCOTIA FROM ITS CESSION, IN 1748,  
UNTIL FIRST UNION WITH CAPE BRETON, IN 1820.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Halifax—Old French War—Settled Government—Political  
and Social Progress—Governors.*

1. *Frontier Commission—Exodus of Acadians.*—Soon after the treaty was signed, disputes arose as to the new

---

QUESTIONS.—How did the English colonists act at this crisis? To what does Chapter XVI relate? Give the principal subjects of it. What occurred after the treaty?



boundaries of French and British America, especially in the valley of the Ohio river and in Acadie. Colonel Mascarene,\* the British governor of Nova Scotia, maintained that the boundaries of Nova Scotia, or Acadie, as ceded to Britain, extended as far south-westward as the mouth of the Penobscot river, thence north to the St. Lawrence, including the peninsula of Gaspé, and the whole of the Nova Scotian peninsula. La Galissonnière, the French Governor of New France, or Canada, insisted that Acadie only extended to the Bay of Fundy (Française) and Minas Basin, and did not include either the isthmus, or the Cobequid-Chiegnecto peninsula. In order to support his views and to prevent further encroachments upon New France, he induced about three thousand Acadian French to migrate from the south to the north shore of the Bay of Fundy, and to the Isle St. Jean (Prince Edward). La Jonquière, who succeeded La Galissonnière, hesitated to adopt the policy of his predecessor; but he sent an expedition against Minas, and the French government directing la Corne, a military adventurer, to erect forts on the disputed territory. The British governor Cornwallis despatched Major Lawrence to resist la Corne, and also to erect forts on the same territory. La Corne burned Chiegnecto, and defied Lawrence to attack him there. Major Lawrence declined to do so, and returned to Halifax. Next year, however, Chiegnecto was taken. Previously to this, in 1749, a joint commission was appointed to define the respective boundaries of both colonies.

---

\* John Paul Mascarene was born in France in 1684. At the revocation of Henri IV's Edict of Nantes by Louis XIV. Mascarene's father, who was a Huguenot, had to fly. Young Mascarene at the age of 12, went to Geneva, and thence to England, where he was naturalized, in 1706. Having received a lieutenant's commission, he came to America in 1711, and was employed in Nova Scotia. In 1720 he became a member of Governor Philip's Council. From 1740 to 1749, he was Lieutenant-Governor of Nova Scotia, and afterwards served as a member of the council of his successor, Governor Cornwallis. He was made a colonel in 1750, and returned to Boston, his wife's birth-place, where he died in 1760, aged 76 years.

---

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of Colonel Mascarene. What disputes occurred about the Acadian boundary, and with what result? How did la Galissonnière seek to promote the French view of the treaty?

2. *Halifax Founded*.—In the meantime, at the urgent request of the New England colonies, the British government offered free grants of land to such of the military as might choose to settle in Nova Scotia. A free passage was also offered, as well as tools, arms, and rations for a year. In consequence of this liberality, nearly 4,000 disbanded soldiers, under Governor Cornwallis, arrived in Chebucto Harbor on the 21st of June, 1794, and on its shores commenced the settlement of a town. In honor of the Lord Halifax, then Lord President of the English Board of Trade and Plantations (who had taken an active interest in the project of settlement), they named the new town “Halifax.”

3. *Colonial Government Established*.—On the 14th of July, 1749, Cornwallis established the government of the colony, and appointed six members of council to aid him. In 1752, Cornwallis returned to England, and was succeeded by Governor Thomas Hobson. In the following year, nearly 1,500 Germans joined the colony, and settled in the county of Lunenburg.

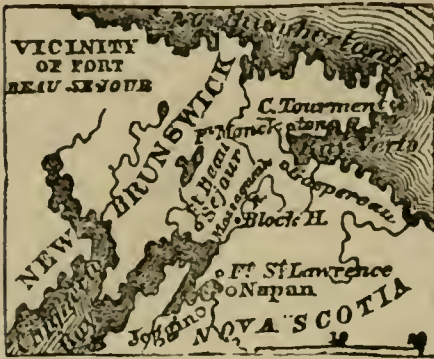
4. *Old French War*.—The great war of 1755–63, called the old French and Indian war, which ended in the cession of Canada, originated chiefly in the territorial disputes between the French and English colonists on the banks of the Ohio to which we have referred (see page 77), but it was also doubtless hastened by the harsh treatment and unfeeling expulsion of the Acadians in the previous year.

5. *Expedition against Nova Scotia*.—At the conference of British Governors held at Alexandria, Virginia, in April, 1755 (see page 80), one of the four expeditions planned was the reduction of Louisbourg by Governor Lawrence. In 1755 the first blow was struck in this memorable seven years' war. In May of that year, a

---

QUESTIONS.—Give the particulars of the founding of Halifax. When and by whom was a settled government established in Nova Scotia? What disputes led to the old French and Indian war?





Fort Beauséjour.

force under Col. Winslow was despatched from Boston to attack the French forts in the disputed territory on the north shore of the Bay of Fundy. Here he was joined by Col. Monckton with regular troops and artillery. They soon invested Fort Beauséjour, which was commanded by De Verger, captured it, and changed its name to Fort Cumberland. They also took a small fort on the Gaspereau. The fort on the St. John was abandoned and burnt.

6. *Expulsion of Acadians.*—In the harassing disputes which arose between the French and English in regard to the boundaries of Nova Scotia, the Acadian French, although called neutrals, incited the Indians, and took part with them against the English colonists. They also assisted La Corne in his attack on Bay Verte in 1750. Fearing that they would aid their countrymen in invading Nova Scotia, Cols. Winslow and Monckton, on the 10th of September, 1755, collected the Acadian population at various points, on pretence of conferring with them, and then cruelly forced them, young and old, innocent and guilty, on board several ships, which conveyed them to New England, New York, Virginia, and Georgia. About 7,000 were thus exiled, and their lands and cattle were confiscated. Their places were chiefly filled by New England colonists. After the peace of 1763, many of the exiles returned to Nova Scotia, and settled in the interior.

7. *Final Capture of Louisbourg.*—In 1756, an unsuccessful attempt was made against Louisbourg; but in 1758, after a vigorous defence for two months, it was finally taken from the French, by a force of nearly 40,000 men,

---

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the expedition against Nova Scotia and the forts there. Give an account of the expulsion from Nova Scotia of the French Acadians.

under Gens. Amherst, Wolfe, and Admiral Boscawen. Its fortifications were destroyed, and the inhabitants sent to France.

8. *System of Government from the Conquest.*—The government of Nova Scotia was, from its conquest in 1713 until 1719, vested solely in the governor as commander-in-chief. In that year a council of twelve, appointed by the crown, was associated with him in the administration of public affairs. In cases of emergency, the governor was required to place himself under the direction of the governor of Virginia. Thus the governor and council within themselves exercised the threefold functions and powers of legislature, judiciary and executive. This system continued until 1749, when the seat of government was removed from Annapolis Royal to the new town of Halifax; and Governor Cornwallis was directed to establish three courts of law in the colony.

9. *Settled System of Government.*—In 1758, a constitution was granted to Nova Scotia by England; and on the second of October in that year, its first Provincial Parliament was convened, under the auspices of Governor Lawrence. The Legislature consisted of the Governor, and of an Executive and Legislative Council combined, of twelve members, appointed by the Crown, together with the house of Assembly of twenty-two members, elected by the rate-payers. Although a want of harmony existed between the House of Assembly and the Executive Council, many good laws were nevertheless passed during the first session. In order to promote the settlement of the colony, liberal grants of land were authorized to be made to settlers in the colony; and a promise was made to them of military protection. The Legislature was prorogued in April, 1759; and, in October of that year, the colony sustained a great loss in the death of Governor Lawrence. He was deeply lamented; and a monument

---

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the final capture of Louisbourg. What became of it? Sketch the system of government in Nova Scotia from its conquest to 1719 and 1749. What change then took place? Trace the events occurring from 1758 to 1760.



was erected to his memory in Halifax. In the same month George II died; and a re-election of a House of Representatives became necessary. In July, 1761, the new Legislature met at Halifax; and while it was in session, the Indians of the colony entered into a formal treaty of peace with the Governor, and their chief solemnly buried the hatchet in the presence of the Governor and Legislature. In 1763, Cape Breton was annexed to Nova Scotia, and in 1765 it was formed into a county. In 1770, Prince Edward Island was separated from the government of Nova Scotia. In 1775–76 much sympathy was expressed in some parts of Nova Scotia with the American revolutionists; in consequence of which, the members representing the disaffected districts were not permitted to take their seats in the House of Assembly.

10. *Various Interesting Facts—Loyalists—Maroons, &c.*—After the peace of 1763, many of the disaffected Acadian French who were exiled in 1755 returned to Nova Scotia. In 1764, captains of the King's ships in Halifax were appointed magistrates *ex officio*. After the American revolution, about 20,000 of the royalists were exiled and settled in Nova Scotia. In 1784, in consequence of the large influx of the loyalists, Cape Breton was erected into a separate government, with a capital at Sydney; but in 1820 it was again reunited to Nova Scotia, and authorized to send two members to the Legislature. In 1784 New Brunswick and St. John's Island (Prince Edward,) were also detached from Nova Scotia and made separate governments. In that year, the Nova Scotia House of Assembly consisted of thirty-six members, who were returned from eight counties and one city. In 1787, Prince William Henry (then serving in the navy), afterwards William IV, was entertained by the Executive Council and House of Assembly. In 1791, the great Pictou road was opened. In 1806 the militia was organized. In 1796

---

QUESTIONS.—What two noted deaths took place in 1759? What was the state of feeling in respect to the American Revolution? Give a sketch of the most interesting facts from 1763 to 1814.

about 600 of the Maroons of Jamaica (who, as a race, had, for forty years, harassed the English settlements of that island), were removed to Nova Scotia, with a view to their settlement there as a free people. After unsuccessfully trying the costly experiment for four years they were transferred to Sierra Leone in 1800. In 1816 a stage-coach line was established between Halifax and Windsor. In 1814, \$10,000 were granted by the Nova Scotia Legislature to aid the sufferers by the war in Canada, and in 1827 nearly \$20,000 were collected in Nova Scotia to aid the sufferers by the great fire in Miramichi, New Brunswick.

---

## CHAPTER XVII.

### HISTORY OF NOVA SCOTIA AND CAPE BRETON FROM THEIR UNION, IN 1820, UNTIL 1867.

#### Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

#### *Political and Commercial Progress—Present Period.*

1. *Political and Commercial Progress.*—In 1820, efforts were first formally made to protect the English fisheries on the coast. In 1823 the Roman Catholics were admitted to the full enjoyment of equal civil privileges with other denominations. In 1824, an act was passed authorizing the construction of the Shubenacadie canal, designed to connect Halifax with Cobequid Bay. In 1828, \$1,500 per annum were granted to establish a line of stages between Halifax and Annapolis.

2. *Present Period.*—In 1838, the Executive-Legislative Council was dissolved. An Executive Council of nine members, and a Legislative Council of nineteen members, appointed by the Crown, was substituted in its place. In

---

QUESTIONS.—What did the Nova Scotia Legislature do in 1814, and in 1827? Mention the principal subjects of Chapter XVII. Give a sketch of the political and commercial progress made from 1820 to 1828.



the same year, a deputation from Nova Scotia was sent to confer with Lord Durham (Governor-General of British North America), at Quebec, on a proposed change in the constitution. A confederation of the provinces was also a subject of consideration at that time, as it was with the Duke of Kent in 1814, in Canada in 1849, and between all the provinces in 1864-6. In 1848, a system of government responsible to the Legislature, as in Canada, was introduced. In 1851, the public statutes were revised and consolidated. In the same year further efforts were made to protect the fisheries, and, in 1852, a Provincial force, auxiliary to the Imperial, was placed under the direction of the British Admiral for that purpose. Afterwards a fishing and reciprocity treaty was made with the United States, but it was abrogated by that country in 1866. In 1860, His Royal Highness the Prince of Wales visited Nova Scotia, and was enthusiastically received by all classes of the inhabitants. In addition to the other valuable minerals, gold was discovered in 1861. In 1864 Nova Scotia united with the other colonies in the consideration of a scheme for the confederation of all the provinces of British North America under one government. With that view, a meeting of delegates from each province was held at Charlottetown, Halifax and Quebec. Resolutions approving of confederation were passed by the Nova Scotia Legislature in 1866, and the act of confederation was passed by the British Parliament in 1867.

---

For names of Governors of Nova Scotia, see *Appendix*.

---

QUESTIONS.—Sketch the political and commercial progress made from 1833 to 1852. What was done in 1852 to protect the fisheries? Name the notable event which occurred in 1860. What important political step was taken in 1864? What is said of the confederation?

## PART VI.

## CHAPTER XVIII.

## PROVINCE OF NEW BRUNSWICK.

(So called from the German seat of the Royal House of Brunswick in Europe.)

Size, about the same as Bavaria, or equal to a square of 165 miles

*Geographical Introduction.*

1. *Noted For.*—New Brunswick is noted for its numerous rivers, its fine timber, and its extensive ship-building.

2. *Position and Boundaries.*—This Province (in shape an irregular square) lies south of the Gaspé peninsula, and is bounded on the north by the Bay of Chaleurs and Lower Canada, on the east by the Gulf of St. Lawrence and Nova Scotia, on the south by the Bay of Fundy, and on the west by the State of Maine.

3. *Physical Features.*—The surface of New Brunswick is agreeably diversified with hill and dale, mountain, and valley, picturesque lakes and noble rivers. Its forests are well wooded, and the soil along the rivers and in the valleys is rich and fertile. The fine bays are well adapted for commerce.

---

• QUESTIONS. From what place was New Brunswick named? Mention its size? For what is it noted? Give its position and boundaries. Describe its physical features.



## HISTORY OF NEW BRUNSWICK, FROM ITS DISCOVERY UNTIL ITS SEPARATION FROM NOVA SCOTIA, IN 1784.

### Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

#### *Discovery and Settlement—Indian and Intercolonial Wars —Separation from Nova Scotia.*

[NOTE.—As New Brunswick formed a part of the French Province of Acadie, or the British Province of Nova Scotia for 250 years, from its discovery in 1534 until its separation from Nova Scotia in 1784, its history is necessarily blended with that of the early French and English Acadian colonies of those times. We have, therefore, only inserted the following brief *resume* of the preceding history of Acadie and Nova Scotia up to 1784, with some local references, as being also the history of New Brunswick up to that date. From 1784 New Brunswick has a separate history of its own, and as such we have given it in this chapter.]

1. *Aboriginal Indians*.—When Europeans first visited New Brunswick, three Algonquin nations occupied Acadie, then including New Brunswick and Maine, viz.: The Micmacs, or Souriquois (salt-water men), who occupied the country from Gaspé Bay to the river Ste. Croix; the Etchemins, or Malicetes (canoe-men), from the Ste. Croix to the Penobscot river; and the Abnaquis, or Kannibas, whose hunting-grounds extended from the Penobscot to the Kennebec river. These three nations became afterwards more closely united, and were known by the French under the name of the “Nations Abnaquises.” The Malicetes frequented the river St. John, while the Micmacs kept to the sea-side. These Indians do not now number more than 1,500.

2. *Discovery*.—Jacques Cartier made his first voyage to the New World in 1534; and on the 19th of July entered a deep bay, which, from the intense heat he experienced there, he named the “Baie des Chaleurs.” He was pleased with the country, and experienced kind treatment from the inhabitants. In 1604, De Monts was commis-

---

QUESTIONS.—Mention the principal subjects of Chapter XVIII. What is said in the note about the early history of New Brunswick? Give the names of the Indian tribes of the country, and say where they were found. Sketch the discovery of New Brunswick.

sioned by Henry IV to make further discoveries; and after visiting Port Rosignol (now Liverpool), Nova Scotia, he entered a bay which he named La Baie Française, since known as the Bay of Fundy. Coasting along this bay, with his companion, Poutrincourt, the latter selected a spot on a spacious basin for settlement, and named it Port Royal. De Monts hastened on, and, on the festival of St. John the Baptist (24th June), reached the grand river Ou-an-gou-dy, which he named St. John river. Entering another river, he erected a fort; and from the cross-shaped configuration of the stream and its tributaries, he named it Ste. Croix. This was abandoned, in 1605, for Port Royal, which, for three years, flourished greatly under the guidance of Poutrincourt and Lescarbot. (See Nova Scotia.)

3. *Extent of Acadie.*—At this time the entire country extending from New England to the Bay of Chaleurs, including the islands and peninsula, was called Acadie. The English claimed it by virtue of the discoveries of Cabot; and the French from actual possession. The chief French settlements were Port Royal (Annapolis) and Ste. Croix, —which last was afterwards abandoned for Port Royal, as above.

4. *Original Grants.*—In 1621, James I of England granted to Sir W. Alexander, afterwards the Earl of Stirling, the whole of Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, and Prince Edward Island. With this grant he instituted the order of the Baronets of Nova Scotia, on condition that these baronets would colonize the country. In 1625, Charles I renewed the grant, and included in it the whole of the country from the St. Lawrence to California.

5. *Disputes and Seizure.*—Failing to gain possession himself, Sir William, in 1627, despatched Sir David Kertk and his brother forcibly to expel the French. They soon captured Port Royal, Ste. Croix, and Pem-a-quid, or Pen-ta-go-et (Penobscot). They also made a prisoner of

---

QUESTIONS. When and by whom was Ste. Croix discovered and settled? Mention the extent of Acadie. To whom was the original grant made? What disputes followed? How were the claims compromised?



Claude de la Tour, to whom the French king had made a grant of a tract of country on the St. John.

6. *Compromise of Claims.*—In England, De la Tour and Lord Stirling agreed to compromise their claims, each to receive a part. De la Tour was sent to Acadie to carry out this arrangement; but De la Tour's son (Charles), who was in command of a French fort at Cape Sable (about 75 miles from Sable Island), refused to give it up to his father, who acted as the representative of the English claimants; but in 1632, Charles I ceded the whole country to Louis XIII, and granted Lord Stirling £10,000 (about \$50,000) as indemnity.

7. *Madame de la Tour.*—Charles de la Tour, son of Claude, erected a fort at Gensec, on the St. John River, after he had taken possession of his portion; but his success excited the jealousy of the French Governor, Charles de Menou, Lord of Charnizay and d'Aulnay. In 1638, Louis XIII defined the territory of the disputants. Nevertheless, the dispute continued; and Charnizay, having received orders from Louis XIII in 1644 to arrest de la Tour, laid siege to his fort. De la Tour, aided by Governor Winthrop of Massachusetts, compelled Charnizay to raise the siege. Afterwards, in 1645, in the absence of Charles de la Tour, he again laid siege to Fort de la Tour, near the site of the present city of St. John. Madame de la Tour, an heroic lady, gallantly defended the Fort, and thrice repulsed him. Charnizay, mortified to find that he had been so long resisted by so small a force, had the barbarity to hang all the survivors, and even compelled this noble lady, with a halter round her neck, to witness their execution. She did not long survive the mental agony to which she had been thus exposed. Charnizay was in 1647 made Governor of the Colony, and died in 1650.

8. *Indian inroads.*—In 1639, French settlements were made on the Bay of Chaleurs; and in 1672, on the river

---

QUESTIONS. Who was Charles de la Tour? What dispute had he with Charnizay? Give an account of the heroic conduct of Madame de la Tour in the defence of the fort. What Indian contests took place?

Miramichi, and at other places on the eastern coast. The English colonists who settled in the colony after the successive conquests or partial conquests, suffered much from the Indians, and were involved in the contests between the Mohawks and the Micmacs. The Mohawks were victorious; but in 1692, the Micmacs, under their chief, Halion, attacked the whites, burned their houses, and compelled them to fly. To allay this enmity, bounties were offered to such colonists as would marry Indian wives,—but this plan did not succeed.

9. *Capture and Cession.*—In 1652, Chas. de la Tour married Charnizay's widow, and succeeded to his estates. Le Borgne, a creditor of Charnizay, attacked de la Tour in St. John; but Cromwell having directed Colonel Sedgewick in 1654 to recover Nova Scotia from the French, he defeated de la Tour at St. John, and Le Borgne at Port Royal, and took the whole of Acadie. (See also History of Nova Scotia.) In 1667, the colony was again ceded to France, by Charles II. In 1690, Sir Wm. Phipps took Port Royal and other places. Villebon, the French governor, however, soon recaptured them; and from Fort Villebon; or Natchwack (near the site of Fredericton), on the river St. John, the Indians were supplied with arms to attack the English colonies in New England. The people of Massachusetts retaliated; and Col. Church took some posts in Acadie, and then returned to Boston. In 1696, the country was again ceded to France, by the Treaty of Ryswick. In 1704, Col. Church attacked St. John, Minas and two other posts, but failed. In 1704 another unsuccessful expedition, under Col. Marck, was sent against Acadie. In 1710, however, Gen. Nicholson captured Port Royal, the chief port in Nova Scotia, which he named Annapolis; and, in 1713, by the Treaty of Utrecht, the whole of Nova Scotia, including what is now New Brunswick, was ceded to Great Britain. In 1758 the first Parliament of the Colony met at Halifax.

---

QUESTIONS.—Give a further account of Charnizay's dispute with de la Tour. How was it ended? Mention the provisions of the treaty of Ryswick. What expedition was undertaken? What local contests took place?



10. *Local Contests.*—From 1713 until 1763, contests with the Micmac Indians and attacks from the French, who endeavored to regain the country colonized by their countrymen, harassed the English settlements. But by the treaty of 1763, which followed the capture of Louisbourg and Quebec, France renounced all claim to either Acadie or Canada.

11. *Settlement and Early Privations.*—In 1761, some settlers in the county of Essex, Massachusetts, obtained a grant of an area of country about twelve miles square on the St. John river. Next year they left Essex, and, after some delay, settled at Mangerville, in Sunbury; others settled near Carlow, at the head of the Bay of Fundy. Justices of the peace were appointed for the first time, and a court held there. In 1764, emigration from Great Britain flowed into New Brunswick; and during the American revolution many settlers came in from the adjoining colonies. William Davidson, from Scotland, formed a settlement at Miramichi, which in 1777 was nearly destroyed by the Indians, who had declared in favor of the American revolutionists. Privateers also pillaged the settlement. In 1783, peace was proclaimed; and great numbers of the disbanded troops and of the United Empire Loyalists settled in New Brunswick. The loyalists had to seek shelter in log and bark huts; and had, for a length of time, to suffer more than the usual hardships and privations incident to a settler's life in the wilderness. For the first year the British government liberally supplied these devoted loyalists with provisions, clothing, and some farming implements.

---

QUESTIONS. What is said of settlements and early privations? What settlements were made in New Brunswick? Where did the colonists come from? Give an account of the U. E

## CHAPTER XIX.

NEW BRUNSWICK, FROM ITS SEPARATION FROM NOVA  
SCOTIA IN 1784, UNTIL 1866.

## Principal Subjects of this Chapter

*Civil Government Established—Fires—Ashburton Treaty—  
Responsible Government.*

1. *A Separate Province.*—In 1784-5, New Brunswick (then the county of Sunbury) was detached from Nova Scotia and became a separate Province. A town was built at the mouth of the St. John (now the important commercial city of St. John), and another at St. Anne's Point, called Fredericton. This last place became the capital of the new Province. Two military posts were established up the St. John,—one at Presqu'Isle, eighty miles from Fredericton, and the other at the Grand Falls, a hundred and thirty-two miles from Fredericton. A constitution was also granted to New Brunswick by royal charter, and Thomas Carleton, Esq., appointed governor. During his administration, of nearly twenty years, the country greatly prospered. From a rude, uncultivated wilderness, peopled chiefly by warlike Indians, he left it with many comfortable settlements, and with a regular

---

QUESTIONS.—When did New Brunswick become a separate Province? What towns were soon after built? What place became the capital of the Province? What is said of Gov. Carleton's administration of affairs?





Grand Falls, on the St. John River.

government, and established local courts, together with other evidences of permanent growth and stability. After he had departed for England, the government was administered, until 1817, by officers styled Presidents. In 1809 the Parish Parliament imposed a duty upon timber coming from the Baltic into England, while that from New Brunswick and other colonies was admitted free. This continued to give a great impulse to the timber trade of the country, until, in 1825, from over-trading, a reaction took place. It again recovered, and, although subject to fluctuation, the timber trade and commerce of New Brunswick has continued to flourish. At the close of the American war, in 1815, New Brunswick received a large number of military colonists, disbanded from the British army then in America. In 1817, Major-General G. S. Smyth was appointed to succeed Governor Carleton. He died in

---

QUESTIONS. — What title had the early governors? How was the timber-trade fostered? Did prosperity last? Name the governors.

1823; and in 1824, Major-General Sir Howard Douglas was appointed Governor.

2. *Fire in Miramichi Woods.*—In 1825, an exceedingly hot summer occurred, and a great fire devastated the entire east coast of Miramichi, covering an area of 6,000 square miles, and 500 lives were lost, and property to the amount of a million of dollars destroyed. \$200,000 were collected in various places for the sufferers. In 1831, Sir Howard Douglas, who had successfully governed the Province for fourteen years, retired, and was succeeded by Sir Archibald Campbell, in 1832.

3. *Fire in St. John.*—In 1837 a destructive fire visited the city of St. John, when 115 houses, and property to the value of \$1,000,000, were destroyed.

4. *Revenue Surrendered.*—In 1837, the revenues of the Province were surrendered to the local government on condition that the payment of the salaries of certain civil officers, amounting to \$58,000 per annum, should be granted to Her Majesty. In 1838, Sir Archibald Campbell retired (the House of Assembly having requested his recall) and Sir John Harvey was appointed in his place.

5. *Ashburton Treaty, &c.*—In 1842, the Ashburton Treaty between Great Britain and the United States was negotiated by Lord Ashburton. By it the disputed boundary between Maine and New Brunswick was settled. This territory contained 12,000 square miles, or 7,770,000 acres. Maine received 4,500,000 acres, and New Brunswick 3,200,000. Before the boundary dispute was settled, great discontent was felt by the inhabitants in the disputed territory, and collisions took place between them. The boundary-line between Canada and New Brunswick was afterwards peaceably settled. Reciprocity treaties and arrangements with the United States and Canada, and other provinces have since been effected. In 1845, commissioners were appointed to survey a rail-

---

QUESTIONS.—What calamities occurred? What revenue change was made in 1837. Mention the divisions made of the disputed territory under the Ashburton Treaty. What state of feeling existed on the subject?



way route from Halifax to Quebec across New Brunswick, and in 1862–4 the project of this great intercolonial railway was again revived, and has since been carried into effect.

6. *Responsible Government*, similar to that of Canada, was introduced in 1848. Since then the Province has increased in wealth, population, and importance; and now equally with the other North American colonies enjoys the protection of Great Britain, and the fullest exercise of political freedom compatible with the maintenance of that cordial and happy connection which subsists between New Brunswick and the mother country. In 1860 His Royal Highness the Prince of Wales visited New Brunswick, and was very cordially received by the inhabitants. In 1864 delegates from the Province united with the delegates of the other provinces to consider a scheme of confederation for the whole of the British North American Provinces. It was agreed to by a vote of the legislature in 1866, and consummated in 1867.

---

For Governors and Presidents of New Brunswick, see *Appendix*.

---

QUESTION.—What events occurred in 1848 and 1860 ?

## PART VII.

## CHAPTER XX.

## THE ISLAND OF PRINCE EDWARD.

(So called from Prince Edward, Duke of Kent, Queen Victoria's father.)

Size, about equal to a square of 46 miles.

## GEOGRAPHICAL INTRODUCTION.

1. *Noted For.*—Prince Edward Island is noted for its fertility, and for its comparatively salubrious climate.

2. *Position and Extent.*—This crescent-shaped island, 130 miles long by about 34 wide, occupies the southern portion of the Gulf of St. Lawrence. It is 30 miles from Cape Breton, 15 from Nova Scotia, and 9 from New Brunswick, and follows the curve of their coast line. The Northumberland Straits separate it from the mainland.

3. *Physical Features.*—The surface is slightly undulating. A chain of hills extends nearly westward of Richmond Bay, but in no place do they reach a high elevation. The land is very level. The indentations along the coast are numerous, the chief of which are Hillsborough and Richmond bays. These penetrate the island from opposite directions, and divide it into three separate peninsulas.

HISTORY OF ST. JEAN, OR PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND,  
1497–1770. \*

## Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Discovery—Original Grants—Survey and Settlement.*

4. *Discovery.*—Sebastian Cabot, in his voyage from

---

QUESTIONS.—How did Prince Edward Island receive its name? For what is it noted? Mention its size—its position—extent. Describe the physical features of Prince Edward Island. Mention the principal subjects of chapter XX. Give an account of the discovery of P. E. I.



Bristol to the New World, is believed to have discovered the island on St. John's day, 1497. From this circumstance it was called by Champlain (the founder of Quebec), in his sketch of New France, Isle St. Jean, or St. John,—a name which it retained until 1800. Verazzani is also supposed to have visited the island in 1524.

5. *Original Grant.*—The Indians found on the island belonged to the Micmac and Abenaki tribes of Acadie and New England. They were left in undisturbed possession of it for nearly two centuries after Cabot's visit; although, with Cape Breton, the island had long been included in that part of the territory of New France called Acadie. At length, in 1663, with the Magdalen Islands, it was granted by the French king to Sieur Doublet, a French naval captain, for fishing purposes. In 1715, two years after the Treaty of Utrecht, many French families removed to the island from Nova Scotia, and a few from Cape Breton.

6. *Captures.*—In 1745 Louisbourg, Cape Breton, was taken by the New Englanders; and they also laid claim to this island; but it was restored to the French in 1748, by the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle. In 1758, it was again captured; and Col. Lord Rollo, with a detachment of troops, took possession of it, by Lord Amherst's directions. Many of the French inhabitants, fearing expulsion, left the island shortly afterwards. At length, by the treaty of 1763, it was, with Cape Breton, finally ceded to the British Crown, and attached to the government of Nova Scotia.

7. *Survey and Settlement.*—In 1764–6, the island was surveyed by Capt. Holland. Lord Egmont's plan, among others, to erect it into feudal baronies, was not approved; but, as advised by the Board of Trade and Plantations, it was, by order of King George III, divided into townlands (or townships), of about 20,000 acres, and

---

QUESTIONS.—When and to whom was the island originally granted? What noted captures were made on the island in 1745 and 1758? When and by whom was the island surveyed? What plan of settlement was adopted.

in 1767 distributed, by Lord Wm. Campbell, the governor, by lottery, among army and navy officers, and others who had claims upon the government, on certain prescribed conditions of settlement, and the payment of a quit-rent. Only a small portion of the island (6,000 acres) was reserved for the king, and 100 acres in each township for a minister, with 30 acres for a school-master, besides a breadth of 500 feet running along the coast for the purposes of free fishery. The settlement of the island progressed very slowly under this mortmain system. In 1875, however, an arrangement was made whereby this anomalous system of land tenure in Prince Edward Island was exchanged for that effected by purchase.

---

## CHAPTER XXI.

### HISTORY OF PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND, FROM ITS SEPARATION FROM NOVA SCOTIA UNTIL THE PRESENT TIME, 1770—1866.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Constitution — Quit-Rents — Immigration — Political Progress.*

1. *Separate Government.*—The proprietors having petitioned the King, and promised to bear part of the necessary expenses, His Majesty, in 1770, erected St. John (or Prince Edward) Island into a separate government, and appointed Walter Paterson, Esq., the first governor.

2. *Constitution Granted.*—In 1773, a constitution, similar to those of the other North American Provinces, was granted; and in that year the first meeting of the

---

QUESTIONS.—Mention the principal subjects of chapter XXI. When was a constitution granted? Give a sketch of the government.



legislature took place. The government consisted of a Lieutenant-Governor, aided by a combined Executive and Legislative Council, and a house of Assembly of 18 members. Of the Executive Council, three were members of the Legislative Council, and one of the House of Assembly. This constitution was modified in 1861.

3. *Washington and the Islanders.*—In 1775, two American cruisers, taking advantage of the defenceless state of the island, attacked and plundered Charlottetown, carrying off the acting governor and two other civil officers. The matter having been reported to General Washington, he reprimanded and dismissed the captains of the cruisers, restored the plundered property, and set the governor and his officers free, with many courteous expressions of regret for their sufferings.

4. *Duke of Kent and the Islanders.*—The Duke of Kent (father to the Queen), who for ten years resided, at different times, at Halifax, as commander-in-chief, paid great attention to the state of its defences. He had batteries erected for the protection of Charlottetown; and organized the militia for the protection of the island during the revolutionary war. He returned to England in 1800; and, as a mark of esteem for their protector, the House of Assembly changed the name of the island from St. John to Prince Edward.

5. *Quit-Rents Composition.*—In 1797, the proportion of rents paid by the proprietors not being sufficient to defray the expenses of government, the British Parliament, upon the presentation of the House of Assembly, made an annual grant for that purpose. In 1802, the arrears of quit-rents amounted to \$300,000. To relieve the proprietors of this heavy burden, the Imperial government accepted a liberal composition for the debt.

6. *Increased Immigration.*—The effect of this generous step was at once perceptible in the increased prosperity

---

QUESTIONS.—What is said of Washington and the islanders? How did the Duke of Kent act? Mention the financial changes made in 1797.

of the island. In 1803, the Earl of Selkirk (who afterwards colonized Red River Settlement), took over 800 Highlanders: their numbers were afterwards increased to 4,000.

7. *Progress of Events from 1770 to 1833.*—Governor Patterson, being accused of impeding by monopoly the settlement and cultivation of the island, was succeeded by Governor Fanning; who during his nineteen years' service did little to promote the interests of the island. He was succeeded by Governor Desbarres, who was more successful during his eight years' stay. A brother of Sir Sidney Smith became governor in 1813. His tyrannical conduct, however, in refusing to call the Legislature together for four years, and in seeking the arrest of Mr. Stewart, who had been sent to England to represent the grievances of the colony to the king, caused so much agitation, that he was recalled in 1824, and Colonel Ready appointed in his place. During his administration, a census of the inhabitants was taken, and the Roman Catholic disabilities removed. By his excellent qualities he endeared himself to the inhabitants. He was succeeded by Col. Young, who was appointed in 1830. During his administration the agitation for a separation of the Executive and Legislative Councils, and for responsible government commenced.

8. *Progress of Events from 1834 to 1850.*—Governor Young having died in 1837, was succeeded by Sir John Harvey in 1836. Sir John, having been transferred to New Brunswick, was succeeded by Sir Charles Fitzroy in 1837. During his administration, the Legislative Council was remodelled. A separate Executive Council of nine members, was formed, and a Legislative Council of twelve appointed, exclusive of the Chief Justice, who retired from it. Sir Charles having been appointed to the West Indies, Sir H. V. Huntley succeeded him in 1841.

---

QUESTIONS.—What is said of immigration? Give a sketch of the progress of the principal events which took place from 1770 to 1833—and also from 1834 to 1850. Who were the island governors during those years?

In that year a census was taken. In 1842, education was greatly promoted. In 1837 the Colonial Building was commenced ; and in 1846 a geological survey of the island was made. Governor Huntley having retired, Sir Donald Campbell was appointed in 1847. In that year the House of Assembly passed an address to Her Majesty, praying for the introduction into the Province of Responsible Government. In 1848 a census was taken. Further contests took place with the Legislature on the subject of responsible government, in the midst of which Governor Campbell died, and was succeeded by Sir Alexander Bannerman in 1850.

9. *Progress of Events from 1850 to 1864.*—In 1851, during Governor Bannerman's administration, responsible government was fully introduced into the island. In 1852 an important Act establishing free education was passed. In 1853, an Act establishing universal suffrage was passed. Governor Bannerman having been removed to the Bahamas, he was succeeded by Sir Dominick Daly (formerly Secretary of Canada) in 1854. In that year an Act was passed to give effect to Lord Elgin's Reciprocity Treaty with the United States. In the same year the members of the House of Assembly were increased from twenty-four to thirty members. In 1856 a Normal school was established. In 1857 an agitation commenced on the question (which was decided in the affirmative in 1860) of regulating the introduction of the Bible into common schools. Governor Daly having retired, he was succeeded by Governor Dundas in 1859. In 1860, the members of the Legislative Council were also increased from twelve to seventeen. Three acts were passed during this year for improving education in the island. The memorable visit of His Royal Highness the Prince of Wales also took place in 1860, and he was everywhere greeted with demonstrations of joy. An important Commission was ap-

---

QUESTIONS.—What improvements were made in 1837 ? What was done in 1848 ? Who succeeded Governor Campbell ? Give a sketch of the progress of events from 1860 to 1866.



appointed this year to inquire into the state of the land question with a view to suggest a fair and equitable mode of converting the leaseholds into freeholds. In 1861, the Commissioners presented a minute and valuable report on the subject. General prosperity has since prevailed, and every effort is now made to develop the physical resources of the island. In 1864, a meeting of delegates from each of the several British Provinces was held, at Charlottetown, to consider the expediency of uniting all the Provinces under one Confederation. Great unanimity on the subject prevailed. Subsequent meetings were held by the delegates at Halifax and Quebec in the same year. The island was admitted to the Dominion Confederation in 1873.

---

For names of Governors of Prince Edward Island, see *Appendix*.

---

## PART VIII.

### CHAPTER XXII.

#### THE PROVINCE OF NEWFOUNDLAND.

(So called from being the first land "found" in the New World by Sir John Cabot.)

Size, less than one-third that of Ontario, or equal to a sq. of 245 miles.

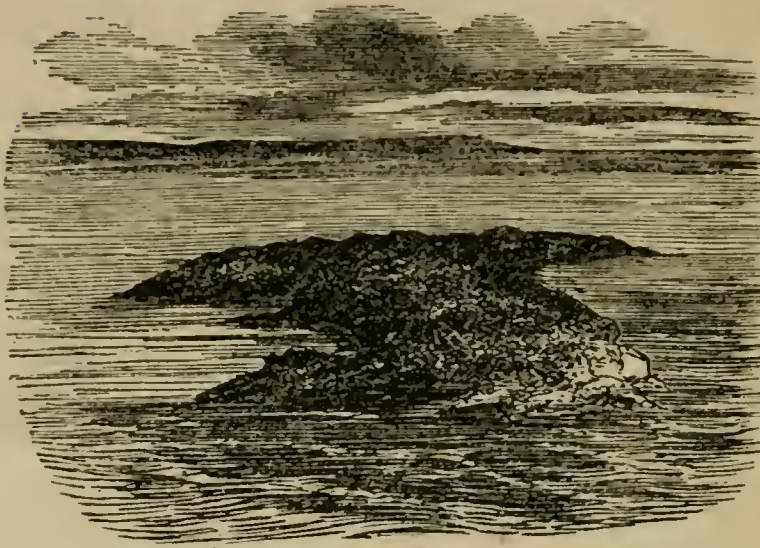
#### GEOGRAPHICAL INTRODUCTION.

1. *Noted For*.—Newfoundland is noted for its fisheries, and for being the first British colony established in America.

---

QUESTIONS.—What commission was appointed? To what does Part VIII relate? How did Newfoundland receive its name?

2. *Position*.—This island is the largest in the North Ame-



rican seas, and lies at the entrance to the Gulf of St. Lawrence. It is triangular in shape, and is about 1,200 m. in circumference. Its length is 400 m., its greatest width 300.

Appearance of Newfoundland from a Balloon.

3. *Physical Features*.—The coast-line is pierced by many fine bays and harbors. The surface is much diversified by numerous hills, rivers, lakes, mossy marshes, and barren rocky ridges, especially along the western coast.

## HISTORY OF THE ISLAND OF NEWFOUNDLAND.

### Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Indians—Discovery—Fisheries—Expedition—Settlement—Government—Wars.*

4. *The Red Indians*.—An Algonquin tribe, called Bæothic, or Bethuck, with some Esquimaux Indians, occupied the Island of Newfoundland when Sebastian Cabot first visited it. Their food then was raw flesh. They resided chiefly in the vicinity of the Exploits river, but are now extinct. They were ruthlessly exterminated by the Mic-

---

QUESTIONS.—What is the position and shape of Newfoundland? Describe its physical features. Mention the principal subjects of chap. xxxv. What is said of the Bæothic, Esquimaux, and Micmac, or Red Indians?

mac Indians and the whites, who waged perpetual warfare against them. The Micmacs having painted their persons with the red ochre found in the island, received the name of the "Red Indians." Their mode of capturing deer was ingenious. They cut down trees on either bank of a river, so as to form a brush fence, leaving openings at intervals, through which the deer must pass, in doing which these unsuspecting animals became an easy prey to the hunter. There are now very few Indians, if any, on the island.

5. *Northern Discovery*.—It is supposed that Newfoundland, or Helluland, was originally discovered by Bjarne, son of Heriulf Bardson, a follower of Eric the Red, Earl of Norway, who in the year 986, emigrated from Iceland to Greenland. Leif, son of the Earl, is said to have made a second visit in the year 1000, and to have gone as far south as Vinland (Massachusetts), "a place of grapes." Thorwold, brother of Leif, reached Vinland in 1002, but returning home, fell in with the Skrelling, or Esquimaux Indians, and was killed. His brother Thorstein sought to recover his body but failed. In 1004 Thorfinn, a person of illustrious lineage, is also said to have made a voyage to Helluland, Markland (Nova Scotia), and Vinland. These statements are disputed, but they are supported by various authorities.

6. *Cabot's Discovery*.—Columbus, having in vain applied to King Henry VII of England to become the patron of his great enterprise, was compelled at length to seek the aid of the King, and especially of the Queen, of Spain. After his famous discovery was known, Henry was chagrined at his own supineness, and he then resolved to retrieve his error. He therefore, in May, 1497, despatched John Cabot and his sons on a voyage of discovery to the west. On the 24th June they reached a point on the American coast, either Labrador, or more probably

---

QUESTIONS.—Who first discovered Newfoundland in 986? Mention the discoveries of the Northmen. What led to Cabot's voyage? Give an account of his discovery of Newfoundland.



Newfoundland, to which, as the land first seen, they gave the name of Prima Vista. Owing to the quantities of cod-fish on the coast, they called the place Bac-ca-la-os (which was the local, as well as the Breton name for cod-fish). (See page 23.) This name is still given to a small island off the northern point of the Avalon peninsula, which would seem to indicate the precise spot "first seen" by the Cabots. In the manuscript records of the payments out of Henry VII's "privy purse," preserved in the British Museum, is the interesting one of "£10," paid on the 10th of August, 1497, "to hym that found the New Isle." In 1498, Sebastian Cabot, who became a celebrated navigator, again visited the island, and sailed as far north as Hudson Bay.

7. *Cortereal's Visit—First Fisheries.*—In 1500, Gaspard Cortereal, a Portuguese, visited the island. He gave to Conception Bay and Portugal Cove the names they still bear. His account of the abundance of fish on the banks induced the Portuguese, in 1502, to establish the fisheries, which have since become so famous and productive. The French, Spaniards, and English soon followed, and in 1617 there were fifty vessels engaged in the enterprise. In 1578 this number had increased to 400. The Portuguese soon after ceased to visit the coast, leaving the fisheries chiefly in the hands of the French and the English.

8. *Verrazzani's Visit.*—In 1523, John Verrazzani visited the island, and carefully examined 2,000 miles of the adjacent coast. Upon his examination and report, the French laid claim to the whole country, as forming part of New France.

9. *Cartier's Visit.*—In 1534, Jacques Cartier went partially around the island of Newfoundland, on his way to Canada, and so pleased was he with the scenery of the cape which he first saw, that he called it "Bonavista," a name it still bears. Sailing northwards of New-

---

QUESTIONS.—What places were visited? Mention the historical records of the discovery. Who followed Cabot? What nations engaged in the fisheries? Were other visits made to the island.

foundland, he passed through the Strait of Belle Isle into the Gulf of St. Lawrence.

10. *Gilbert's Expedition.*—During the memorable reign of Queen Elizabeth, London, Bristol, and other English ports actively engaged in the Newfoundland fisheries. At this time the question of a north-west passage to India occupied public attention. Colonization, too, had its ardent promoters. Among the distinguished friends to



Sir Walter Raleigh.

this Scheme in England was Sir Walter Raleigh,\* whose name is so memorable in the early history of the State of Virginia. With his half-brother, Sir Humphrey Gilbert, he obtained a charter of colonization from the Queen. The first expedition which sailed met with disaster, and returned. Sir Walter was to have accompanied the second, but sickness in his ship prevented him. It sailed, however, for Newfoundland, and

in August, 1583, Sir Humphrey Gilbert landed, after a slight opposition, at St. Johns, and took formal possession of the island in the name of Queen Elizabeth. Collecting the masters, merchants, and artisans whom he had brought with him, he read his commission, and afterwards promulgated several laws. On his return home, he was

---

\* Sir Walter Raleigh was born in Devonshire in 1552. He was distinguished as a courtier, soldier, diplomatist, literary man, and traveller. He was a favorite with Queen Elizabeth, who knighted him. After her death he was accused of high treason, and by the King's orders, confined in the Tower of London for fifteen years. Here he wrote "The History of the World" and other books. At length, 1616, he was released, and appointed to command an expedition to South America. Being unsuccessful, James I. cruelly had him executed under his old sentence. He is said to have introduced tobacco and potatoes into Europe.

---

QUESTIONS.—What led to Sir Humphrey Gilbert's expedition? Give a sketch of Sir Walter Raleigh's career. Give an account of Sir H. Gilbert's expedition. What did he do on his arrival in Newfoundland?



unfortunately shipwrecked, and lost his life near the Azores.\* In 1587 Martin Frobisher, the noted Arctic explorer, visited Labrador, and it is supposed Newfoundland also. In 1585 Sir Francis Drake made a voyage to Newfoundland, and captured some Portuguese ships there, which were laden with fish, oil, and furs.

11. *Guy's expedition*.—In 1610, James I. granted to Lord Bacon and forty others, a patent to colonize the island. They sent John Guy, from Bristol, who established a colony at Conception Bay. He undertook a survey of the coast, and held friendly intercourse with the Red Indians; but after a while sickness compelled Guy and some of his party to give up the project and return to England.

12. *Whitbourne's Admiralty Courts*.—In 1614, permanent dwelling-houses were first erected in Newfoundland; and in 1615 Capt. Whitbourne was despatched to the island, by the Admiralty, to hold courts, empanel juries, and settle fishery disputes. Whitbourne also, in 1617, planted a Welsh colony at a place named Cambriol, now called Little Britain.

13. *Baltimore's Colony*.—In 1622, Sir George Calvert, afterwards Lord Baltimore, while Secretary of State, obtained letters patent from James I., granted to him the entire peninsula which is formed by the Bays of Placentia and Trinity. This extensive peninsula he erected into a province, and gave to it the name of Avalon—which was the ancient name of Glastonbury, where Christianity was first introduced into England. He appointed Capt. Wynne local governor, who fixed his residence at Ferryland. Lord Baltimore also resided there for some time; but finding

---

\* The story of his death is a very touching one. He had transferred his flag to the "Squirrel," a little vessel of only ten tons. As he neared the Azores, a violent storm arose, which engulfed his vessel. When last seen by those on board his companion ship, he was sitting on the deck with a book before him. His last words heard were, "Cheer up, boys; we are as near heaven by sea as by land!"

---

QUESTIONS.—Mention the incident connected with Sir Humphrey Gilbert's death. What is said of Guy's expedition in 1610? What occurred in 1614? What did Whitbourne do in 1615 and 1617? Mention the connection which Lord Baltimore had with the history of Newfoundland.





Cecil, second Lord Baltimore.

the soil and climate unfavorable, and the French inhabitants hostile, he went, in 1628, to Virginia; but not liking it, he selected a spot nearer to the sea-coast. Here, after his death, in 1632, a patent (from Charles I) was issued to his son, Cecil, second Lord Baltimore,\* under which was founded the colony of Maryland. In this Roman Catholic colony, the utmost toleration was allowed to the inhabitants in religious matters, while in the New England colonies it was denied at the same time to all but the dominant party. The name Baltimore was given to the capital of the new colony. † Having abandoned his estates in Newfoundland during the Protectorate of Cromwell they were restored to him in 1660. In 1754 (nearly a century afterwards) his heirs claimed the peninsula, but the claim was disallowed.

14. *French Tribute*.—In 1626, the French established a colony at Placentia, which led to many disputes; and in 1634, rather than relinquish the fisheries, they agreed, for the privilege of fishing, to pay five per cent, tribute on all the fish taken. The impost continued for forty years.

15. *Kertk's settlement*.—In 1654, Sir David Kertk obtained a grant, and established a settlement. In 1663, there were fifteen British settlements, and about four

---

\* Cecil, second Lord Baltimore, succeeded to his father's title in 1632. He appointed his brother Leonard first governor of Maryland. He died in 1676. The colony remained in the possession of the Calvert family until the American revolution.

† In 1763–65 the boundary-line between Maryland and Pennsylvania was laid down by Charles Mason and Jeremiah Dixon—two English astronomers. Ever since the phrase "Mason and Dixon's line" has indicated the boundary between the Northern and Southern States.

---

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of the second Lord Baltimore. Mention the contrast in religious liberty between Virginia and New England. What is said of Mason and Dixon's line—French tribute—and Kertk's settlement?

hundred families on the island. They would have rapidly increased, but for the oppressive conduct of those who monopolized the fisheries.

16. *Substitute for Government.*—Newfoundland being regarded in early times as a mere fishing-station for various European navigators and traders, no system of government or even of police, was established on the island. At length, in 1633, Charles I gave directions for the introduction of some system of government, in regard to the fisheries, crime, &c. Rules were laid down for the guidance of the trading fishermen; and the mayors of some of the English seaports were authorized to take cognizance of certain crimes committed on the island. In 1669, "Fishing Admirals," or such masters of convoy or fishing vessels as should first arrive on the coast in each season, were to have the power in such places to execute the law; but ignorance and partiality generally characterized their decisions. Efforts were for a time made by the inhabitants to induce the King to appoint a governor for the colony; but the merchants connected with the fisheries, wishing to discourage settlement, steadily resisted this desire of the colonists. The contest for and against the appointment of a governor became at length so strong that the King directed that both parties should be heard by counsel. Nothing farther, however, was done; and the war with France and her encroachments in Newfoundland prevented any settled scheme from being adopted.

17. *Islanders Deported.*—In the meantime, the jealousy of the merchant fishing-traders, against the settlements already formed in Newfoundland was so great, that orders were even sent out to break up the settlements on the island and remove the islanders; but Sir John Berry, one of the convoy captains, a humane man, remonstrated; and in 1676 the King ordered that the removals should cease. Further emigration to the island was however, forbidden.

---

QUESTIONS.—How was government established? What efforts were made to establish a fixed government in the island? What is said of the attempted deportation of the islanders?

18. *The War of 1692-8.*—The continued recriminations between the rival colonies at length resulted in a mutual determination on the part of England and France to contest each other's power to gain entire possession of the island and its fisheries. The French post of Placentia was attacked in 1692, but the governor made a spirited and successful defence. In retaliation, the French under Iberville (from Canada) and Brouillon, made two attacks upon St. John's, in 1696, and burned it to the ground. All the other British settlements were destroyed, except those at Bonavista and Carbonear, which made a successful resistance. An attempt was made to dislodge the invaders, but with little success. At length, by the treaty of Ryswick, in 1697, the French restored all the places they had taken during the contest, and thus ended the war for a time.

19. *The War of the Succession* revived hostilities in Newfoundland. In 1702, Queen Anne sent out Sir John Leake, who made a successful attack upon the French settlements and captured a number of vessels. In 1703, Admiral Graydon failed in his attacks upon the French. In 1705-8, Placentia having been reinforced from Canada, and further aid having arrived, the French retaliated with such vigor, that, with occasional reverses, they had acquired, in 1708, almost entire possession of the island. The brave fishermen of Carbonear (aided by Captain Underwood) and the fort of St. John's, alone held out. St. John's was, however, surprised and burnt; and the French held possession of it until 1713, when, by the treaty of Utrecht, Louis XIV ceded the whole of Newfoundland to England, retaining only the islands of St. Pierre and Miquelon, off the southern coast.

---

QUESTIONS.—What brought on the war of 1692-8? What of the treaty of 1697? Give a sketch of the progress of the contest from 1702 until the treaty of Utrecht in 1713. For what did that treaty provide?



## CHAPTER XXII.

HISTORY OF THE ISLAND OF NEWFOUNDLAND FROM  
1828 TO 1874.

## Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Government Established—Seven Years' War—Revolution  
—Conspiracy—War Again—Progress.*

*Separate Province.*—In 1728, through the laudable exertions of Lord Vere Beauclerk, commodore on the station, Newfoundland was separated from the nominal government of Nova Scotia and made a distinct province. Captain Osborne was appointed its first Governor, under the new constitution, with power to appoint magistrates and organize a government. He divided the island into districts, and introduced several salutary reforms into the administration of the laws ; not, however, without strong opposition from the trading merchants, who upheld the authority of the "fishing admirals."

3. *Seven Years' War.*—So unprotected was the island left during this war, that in 1761 a merchant brig had to be equipped for its defence, and in 1762, a French fleet surprised and captured St. John's. Capt. Graves, the new Governor, then on his way from England to Placentia, despatched a sloop to Admiral Lord Colville, at Halifax, for help. Lord Colville at once sailed from Halifax and recaptured St. John's. The noble and patriotic conduct of Messrs. Carter and Garland, in provisioning, under great difficulties, the garrisons of Ferryland and Carbonear, and rendering other services during this war was handsomely rewarded by the British Government

---

QUESTIONS.—Mention the principal subjects of this chapter. What events occurred in 1728 ? Mention the principal occurrences of the Seven Years' War.

In 1763, the treaty of Paris, which confirmed the Utrecht treaty of 1612, again put an end to the war and its evils.

4. *Labrador Annexed.*—In 1763, the Labrador coast, from Hudson's Strait to the west end of Anticosti, including that island and the Magdalen Islands, were politically annexed to Newfoundland. They were, however, in 1773, restored to the government of Quebec; but, in 1809, re-annexed to Newfoundland. They are now attached to the government of Canada.\* Cook, the celebrated navigator, took part, in 1762, in the re-capture of St. John's from the French, and was afterwards employed until 1767 to survey the coasts of Newfoundland and Labrador.

5. *Palliser's Act.*—In 1764, Sir Hugh Palliser was appointed Governor. His administration was highly beneficial to the island, and his maritime regulations, with a little modification, were, in 1775, passed into a law. The British navigation laws were, 1765, extended to Newfoundland, and a custom-house established on the island.

6. *American Revolution.*—In 1774, the Americans prohibited the exportation of food to Newfoundland, because the islanders would not aid their cause. By the greatest exertions on the part of England (then engaged in a war with France, Spain, and her revolted American colonies), the inhabitants were, however, saved from starvation. Being acquainted with the coast, the French and Ameri-

---

\* This interesting group of islands lies in about the middle of the Gulf of St. Lawrence. Amherst, the most important island, is about 50 miles from Prince Edward Island, 60 from Cape Breton, 120 from Newfoundland, and 150 from Canada. The other principal islands are: Entry, Grindstone, Allright, Grosse Isle, and Byron. The Bird Rocks lie 50 miles north of Amherst Isle. The Magdalen Islands were ceded to England by France in 1763, and granted to Admiral Sir Isaac Coffin (a native of Massachusetts) in 1798. They now belong to his nephew, Admiral J. T. Coffin. The population is nearly 3,000, made up chiefly of fishermen and their families. The annual value of the exports from the islands is nearly \$300,000. Schools have of late been established in the principal islands of the group.

---

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the annexation of Labrador and the Magdalen Islands? Give an account of these islands. Describe Palliser's Act. What occurred in the Island during the American Revolution?

can privateers harassed the colonists and destroyed their property, when not protected by the English cruisers. But at length the treaty with the separated colonies, in 1783, restored peace to Newfoundland.

7. *Mutinous Conspiracy of 1800.*—For some time after the Irish rebellion of 1798, a spirit of lawless disaffection spread among the floating population of St. John's, and extended even to a regiment of soldiers which had been raised in the island. Through the wise discretion of the Roman Catholic Bishop O'Donnell the plot was discovered and its ringleaders punished. So grateful were the principal inhabitants of the island to the good bishop for his loyal and successful efforts in aiding Gen. Skerrett to frustrate the plot against their lives and property, that they united in a petition to the King to confer upon the bishop some act of royal favor. The petition was granted, and a pension of £50 sterling a year was conferred upon this excellent prelate during his life.

8. *Disasters.*—In 1775, the island was visited by a dreadful storm. The sea rose 20 feet; hundreds of vessels of all sizes were driven on shore, inland property was destroyed, and about 300 persons lost their lives. In 1812-13 a famine occurred, which was greatly mitigated by the arrival of wheat and flour from Canada; in 1816, St. John's was nearly destroyed by fire; loss, \$500,000. In 1817, two other fires occurred in St. John's, destroying property and provisions to the value of \$2,000,000. A great scarcity of food was the consequence. Many riots occurred. England sent relief, and the citizens of Boston freighted a ship with food for the sufferers, and thus almost wiped off the stain of 1774. In 1832, Harbor Grace was burned. In June, 1846, another destructive fire visited St. John's, and about 2,000 houses were destroyed. England, as well as Canada, Nova Scotia, New Brunswick and Prince Edward Island, sent large contributions

---

QUESTIONS.—Give the particulars of the mutinous conspiracy of 1800. How did Bishop O'Donnell seek to counteract it? What was given to the Bishop? Give an account of the chief disasters related above—of the more important events which occurred from 1816 to 1846.



to relieve the suffering caused by this disastrous fire. In September, a furious hurricane ravaged the coast. Much property and many lives were lost.

9. *War Again.*—In 1793, the French republic declared war against England, and, before it terminated, the American republic also declared war, in 1812. In 1796, the town at the Bay of Bulls was taken and destroyed by the French vice-admiral; but the energy of the Governor, Sir James Wallace, and the loyalty of the inhabitants, prevented any further captures being made by him. The war was in other respects advantageous to the trade of Newfoundland. It ended in 1814, when treaties of peace were signed. Depression in trade immediately followed; but it revived again in 1818. In 1819, a fishery convention was concluded with the United States.

10. *Social Progress.*—In 1803, charity and Sunday schools were introduced and benevolent societies established by Governor Waldegrave, aided by the Roman Catholic Bishop and the Protestant clergy. In 1805, a post office was established at St. John's; in 1806, a newspaper was issued—now there are nine; in 1808, militia volunteers were enrolled; in 1808–11, efforts were made to establish friendly relations with the native tribes, but fear on their part prevented it; in 1810, Governor Duckworth made a tour as far as Labrador, with the same object; in 1822, an effort was made by W. E. Cormack, Esq., to explore the interior of the island. In 1824–6, an improved system of judiciary was introduced; in 1828, the St. John's roads, first constructed by Governor Gower in 1806, were greatly improved; in 1830, a court-house and the government house were erected; in 1836, a banking-house was established; in 1839, a geological survey was undertaken; the Roman Catholic Cathedral was commenced in 1841, and the Protestant Episcopal Cathedral in 1843; in 1844, the first mail steam-packet

---

QUESTIONS.—How did the war of 1793 affect Newfoundland? Give a sketch of the social progress of the island of Newfoundland from 1803 to 1810. Mention the principle events of interest which occurred in the island from 1822 to 1858.

entered the harbor of St. John's ; in 1845, gaslight was first used in the island ; in 1846, an act required the houses on two principal streets, parallel to the harbor, to be built of brick or stone ; in 1847, St. John's was supplied with water, agriculture encouraged, a public library and mechanics' institute founded ; in 1858, the ocean telegraph with Europe was successfully opened ; but in a few days afterwards, probably from injury to the submerged cable, it ceased to operate. Various improvements in the island have rapidly followed, and Newfoundland bids fair to enjoy peace and prosperity.

11. *Political Progress.*—In 1830, the civil disabilities of the Roman Catholics were removed. Want of harmony between the Council and the Assembly, established in 1832, as well as election contests, led to strong political dissensions, both between individuals and the local newspapers, and many acts of personal violence occurred in 1840. In 1856, England entered into a convention with France in regard to the fisheries. Before final ratification, the matter was, in 1857, referred to the Newfoundland Legislature for their consideration. The colonists having strongly objected to the proposed concessions to France, England declined to carry the fishery convention into effect. In communicating to the Governor of Newfoundland the articles of a proposed fishery convention with France in 1857, the British Government nobly and distinctly laid down the important principle, "that the consent of the community of Newfoundland is regarded by Her Majesty's government as the essential preliminary to any modification of their territorial or maritime rights." This principle applies to all the colonies alike. In 1860, after the visit of His Royal Highness the Prince of Wales, a disagreement arose on a financial question, between Governor Bannerman and the Colonial Secretary, and a new Executive Council was

---

QUESTIONS.—What telegraph was laid ? Give a sketch of the political progress of Newfoundland from 1830-60. Mention the events which occurred in 1860-61. What important fishery concession was made to Newfoundland and the other colonies in 1857 ?

formed. During the election under its auspices in 1861, serious rioting took place between the Roman Catholics and Protestants. Lives were lost and property destroyed; but at length peace was fully restored. Thus has Newfoundland happily reached a period in her history when under the paternal and powerful protection of Great Britain, she may enjoy the highest political and social prosperity. It is to be hoped that under the Confederation of the Provinces, Newfoundland, although not yet a member of the Dominion, will continue to be a prosperous colony.

---

For names of the Governors of Newfoundland, see *Appendix*.

---

QUESTION.—Mention the political and social prospects of Newfoundland.



## PART IX.

## CHAPTER XXIV.

## PROVINCE OF MANITOBA AND NORTH WEST TERRITORIES.

Size, about half that of British North America, or equal to a square of 1,340 miles.

## GEOGRAPHICAL INTRODUCTION.

1. *Manitoba* was settled by Lord Selkirk in 1811. It was formed into a Province of the Dominion in 1870. Its boundaries now extend southward to the United States boundary line.

2. *Climate and Soil*.—Winter in Manitoba lasts about five months. The soil is deep and rich. On the Lower Saskatchewan River the winters are comparatively short and mild. To the north it is much colder.

3. *Noted For*.—The North West Territories are noted for their great extent, their fur trade, and their great bay, or inland sea.

4. *Position and Extent*.—These vast territories include nominally the following divisions: 1. Labrador; 2. Prince Rupert Land; and 3. Swan River and Saskatchewan, which were granted in 1670, by the charter of Charles II. to the Hudson Bay Company; 4. Mackenzie River; and 5. The North-West Indian Territories, leased by the Company in 1821, and transferred to Canada in 1868, and Keewatin, formed in 1876 out of a part of the North-West Territories.

## LABRADOR PENINSULA SECTION.

(Called by the Spaniards *Tierra Labrador*, it being less barren than Greenland.)

5. *Noted For*.—The Labrador Peninsula is chiefly

---

QUESTIONS.—Give the size of Manitoba and N. W. Territories. Who first settled Manitoba? Give an account of its climate and soil. Describe its position and extent.

noted for its valuable coast fisheries, and its severe climate.

6. *Position and Physical Features.*—This extensive peninsula is the most easterly part of British North America. The country gradually rises into mountain highlands as it recedes from the coast. Near the centre, a range called the Wot-Chish Mountains forms a watershed for the rivers.

#### PRINCE RUPERT LAND (AND EAST MAIN) SECTION.

7. *Extent.*—This portion of the North West Territory includes the whole of the country east, and south of Hudson Bay itself.

#### MACKENZIE AND GREAT FISH RIVERS SECTION.

("Mackenzie," so called from Sir A. Mackenzie, who, in 1789, discovered this Section which is now so named.

8. *Extent, &c.*—This section extends along the Arctic Ocean to the interior waters of the Great Bear, Great Slave, Athabaska, and Pelly Lakes, including the Mackenzie, Coppermine, and Great Fish Rivers.

#### THE NORTH-WEST INDIAN TERRITORIES SECTION.

(So named from being inhabited by various North-West Indian tribes.),

9. *Extent.*—The territories extend nominally from the Mackenzie River Section to the Northern Saskatchewan, and include the indefinite areas drained by the Peace, Athabaska, and northern branch of the Saskatchewan Rivers.

#### MANITOBA, SWAN, AND SASKATCHEWAN RIVERS SECTION.

10. *Extent.*—This section includes the valley of the

---

QUESTIONS.—What is said of Labrador? What is said of Prince Rupert Land section; of Mackenzie and Great Fish Rivers sections; and of the N. W. Indian Territories? Give the extent of the Red River, Swan, and Saskatchewan Rivers sections.

Assinniboine, Qu'appelle, the southern branch of the Saskatchewan, the northern part of Red River, and the Winnipeg Region.

11. *Physical Features*.—The valley of the Saskatchewan is an extensive tract of country, diversified by beautiful scenery and fertile plains. Manitoba is covered with rich prairies and fine lakes. From the Lake of the Woods, a fertile belt of land extends westward to the Rocky Mountains.

---

For names of Governors of Manitoba, see *Appendix*.

---

## CHAPTER XXV.

### HISTORY OF MANITOBA AND THE NORTH WEST TERRITORIES, FORMERLY CALLED THE HUDSON BAY TERRITORY.

#### Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Discovery—Trade—Charter—Intercolonial Contests—North West Company—Divisions.*

1. *Discovery*.—The Hudson Bay (or Hudson Sea) is said to have been reached by Sebastian Cabot, in 1517. In 1523–4, Verrazzani sailed up the coast as far as Davis Straits which were reached by Davis in 1585. Various other English navigators sailed northwards, in quest of a northwest passage to India, but it was not until 1610 that Henry Hudson reached the Straits and Bay now bearing his name.

---

QUESTIONS.—When and by whom was Hudson's Bay discovered? Give the principal subjects of this Chapter.



2. *Other Voyages.*—Button, an English navigator visited the Bay in 1612, Bylot and Baffin in 1616, and Fox and James in 1631. Baffin and James Bays were traced out and examined by these navigators, and received their names.

3. *The Connection with Eastern Canada* was maintained by canoe, along the Saguenay river, and thence overland to the Bay, by the Quebec Fur Company, which was established by Cardinal Richelieu, in 1627. Tadoussac, at the mouth of the river, was their chief trading post in Canada.

4. *English Trade.*—The treaty of St. Germain-en-Laye, in 1632, confirmed the whole of the Hudson Bay territory to France, and De Grozellier and Radisson, two French Canadians, visited it. Having failed to induce their own governments to promote trade in it, they went to England. Prince Rupert entered warmly into their scheme, and despatched them to the Bay on a trading voyage:

5. *Charter to the Hudson Bay Company.*—They reached Nemisco, now called Rupert River, and their report being very favorable, Charles II. was induced (though, by the St. Germain-en-Laye Treaty, he had relinquished his claim to the territory) to grant Prince Rupert and others a charter for traffic, in furs and peltry, in those extensive regions, then called Rupert Land. This was the origin of the famous Hudson Bay Company's charter, of 1670. This charter was, in 1690, confirmed by an act of the British Parliament, for seven years, but has never since been renewed.

6. *French and English Conflicts* in the territory were the consequences of this charter, as the French claimed that Hudson Bay was part of New France. In 1672, MM. Albanel and St. Simon, with the consent of the Indians of that region, planted the fleur-de-lis and the cross at several places, in token, for the third time, of the

---

QUESTIONS.—What other voyages were made to Hudson's Bay? What is said of the Saguenay; English trade? What led to the granting of the Hudson Bay charter of 1670? Give a sketch of the French and English conflicts in the Territory up to 1654.

sovereignty of France over the territory. Having secured the services of De Grozellier, the French Pilot, the new English Hudson Bay Company despatched its first expedition to Port Nelson, on the Bay, in 1673. De Grozellier, not having remained faithful to his engagement with the English, was dismissed, and returned to Europe. He was received with favor in France, and returned to Canada shortly after the French West India Company, which traded in Canada, &c., was dissolved. In 1666, another Franco-Canadian company was formed at Quebec, to promote trade at the northwest, and De Grozellier and Radisson were despatched by it to Hudson's Bay to open a traffic. In 1679, Louis Joliette was despatched by the Quebec Company to Hudson's Bay, "in the public interest." The intrusion of the English in these territories was keenly felt during this time. In 1682, Radisson and De Grozellier were again despatched to Port Nelson, to counteract the trading designs of the English. In 1684, Radisson a second time deserted his fellow colonists and allied himself to the English. He went to London in 1684 and offered his services to the English Hudson Bay Company. They were accepted; and he was placed in command of an expedition, consisting of five vessels, which were despatched in that year to capture the French trading-posts at the Bay. This he did without difficulty. The destruction of the French factories at Port Nelson by Radisson, in 1684, led to spirited reprisals on the part of the company at Quebec; and Chevalier de Troyes and D'Iberville were despatched with troops from Quebec, and, in 1686, succeeded in capturing the principal forts of the company. In 1689, the English sent an expedition to retake their captured forts, but M. D'Iberville defeated them and took their ships. In 1689, they again endeavored to accomplish their objects, but were again repulsed. D'Iberville returned to France in 1791; but,

---

QUESTIONS.—What is said of De Grozellier and Radisson? Give a sketch of the trading contests of the French and English at Hudson's Bay. How did Radisson act in this matter.

in 1694, he was sent to the Bay, with three ships of war, and completed the conquest of the English forts at that place. At the treaty of Ryswick, in 1697, and even up to 1713, the English company had only Fort Albany left.

7. *Contest virtually closed—Treaties of Ryswick and Utrecht*—At length the contests between the rival colonies in the Hudson Bay territory virtually ceased. By the treaty of Ryswick, entered into by France and England in 1697, both parties agreed to restore whatever places at the Bay they were possessed of before the war. Commissioners were appointed to determine this question; but they appear never to have met. At the time of the treaty, however, Fort Albany, on the River Albany, at the east side of James Bay, was the only place in the territory in possession of the English traders, and it continued in their possession undisturbed until the treaty of Utrecht, in 1713. By this noted treaty, France transferred to England the whole of her rights to the Hudson Bay territory, and thus placed a bar on all the trading privileges of her Canadian subjects in that part of New France. The English company has since remained in possession of the territory.

8. *Northwest Company of Canada*.—In 1766, various traders, competitors of the company, engaged in the fur-trade. Their head-quarters were at Montreal, and they followed the old French routes into the interior. In 1784, these traders united, and formed the Northwest Company of Canada. This new company directed its trade chiefly to the northwest, *via* Lake Superior, towards the Pacific Ocean and Columbia River. They even sent trading-ships round Cape Horn.

9. *Northwest Company's Explorations*.—In 1793, Sir Alexander Mackenzie, a partner in the Northwest Company, made his famous journey from Canada, across the

---

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the close of the contest and of the treaties of Ryswick and Utrecht? Give a sketch of the North West Company of Canada. What explorations across the continent did the Co. undertake?



Rocky Mountains, to the Pacific Ocean (the first ever made north of Mexico), and discovered Fraser River. He afterwards discovered and explored the Mackenzie River. In 1811, Mr. Thompson, the astronomer, discovered the northern or main branches of the Columbia River, and descended its stream to the Pacific Ocean.

10. *Lord Selkirk's Colony*.—In 1811, the Earl of Selkirk purchased a tract of country from the Hudson Bay Company, lying between the United States boundary and lakes Winnipeg and Winnipegosis, since called the Red River Settlement. In 1812, he brought settlers from Scotland for his new colony. (Swiss were afterwards introduced; and in 1823, French Canadians.) Subsequently, he appointed Capt. Miles McDonell (who was governor of the Company's district of Assiniboine), superintendent, who issued a proclamation forbidding the appropriation of provisions except to the use of the colonists. This assumption of exclusive jurisdiction on the part of the Hudson Bay Company excited the bitterest feelings on the part of the North-Western Company, and gave rise to the fierce contest of—

11. *The Rival Companies* in the Indian territories; during the progress of which the colonists were twice expelled, and many lives lost, including that of Governor Semple. In 1816, Sir Gordon Drummond sent part of a regiment from Quebec to preserve order, and to restrain the violence of both companies. In 1821, the feud ceased, and the rival companies were amalgamated. When Lord Selkirk died, the company resumed the purchase, on condition of paying a certain quit rent. Most of the original settlers left the colony. The number of residents now amounts to about 12,000. It is a mixed population, and is rapidly increasing. In 1869, the whole North West territory was transferred to the Dominion, having been sold to it by the Hudson Bay Company for \$1,500,000.

---

QUESTIONS.—Mention the particulars of Lord Selkirk's efforts to found a colony. To what did they lead? How was the dispute between the rival companies settled?

12. *Manitoba*.—In 1870 Manitoba (Red River) was set apart as a province of the Dominion of Canada.

13. *Territorial Divisions*.—The Hudson Bay Territory, now known as the North West Territories, was divided into numerous districts, which were embraced in several large departments. There were four depots, and 112 forts or stations. There were also numerous smaller posts and outposts.

14. *The Exports* are chiefly the furs and skins of various wild animals.

15. *The Inhabitants* of the territory include the white traders and half-breeds, besides numerous tribes of Indians.

---

## CHAPTER XXVI.

### ISLAND OF VANCOUVER.

(So called from Vancouver, a Dutch navigator, who discovered it in 1729.) Size, one-fourth smaller than Nova Scotia, or equal to a square of 127 miles.

#### GEOGRAPHICAL INTRODUCTION.

1. *Noted for*.—Vancouver Island is chiefly noted for its coal mines, and for being the largest island on the Pacific coast.

2. *Extent*.—This island is 278 miles long, and 50 or 60 wide. It is separated from British Columbia by the Gulf of Georgia and Queen Charlotte's Sound; and from Washington Territory (in the United States) by the Strait of Juan de Fuca.

3. *Physical Features*.—The surface is marked by mountain-ranges and extensive plains. The Nimkish is the

---

QUESTIONS.—Give the divisions of the North West territory. What is said of the exports—and of the inhabitants? For what is Vancouver Island noted? Give the size, extent and position of Vancouver Island? Describe its physical features.

chief river. The harbors are excellent; the principal of which are Esquimaux, Victoria, Nanaimo (or Noonooa) Inlet, Beecher Bay, and Barclay and Nootka Sounds. Haro Strait separates Vancouver Island from the San Juan Archipelago.

4. *The Climate* is considered to be healthy. There is little frost, and vegetation begins in February. The summer is hot, the autumn dry, and the winter stormy; fogs prevail, and the periodical rains fall heavily.

5. *Products*.—The agricultural capabilities of the island are very great. The principal products, in addition to those of the soil, are furs obtained chiefly from the beaver, the raccoon, the land-otter, and the sea-otter. Fish of the most valuable kind abound on the coast. Gold has been discovered, and coal is found in large quantities.

---

## CHAPTER XXVII.

### BRITISH COLUMBIA.

(So called from Christopher Columbus.)

Size, with islands, the same as Quebec, or equal to a square of 450 m.

### GEOGRAPHICAL INTRODUCTION.

1. *Noted for*.—British Columbia is noted for its rich gold-mines, and for its comparatively mild climate.

2. *Extent*.—This Province embraces the whole of British North America west of the Rocky Mountains. It includes the colony formerly called British Columbia, the Stickeen District, Vancouver Island, and Queen Charlotte Island. It is about 900 miles long, with a breadth on the mainland varying from 250 to 500 miles.

3. *Physical Features*.—The scenery of the northern

---

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the climate and products of Vancouver's Island? Mention the principal subjects of Chapter XXVII. For what is British Columbia noted? Give the size and extent of British Columbia.



part is picturesque, being diversified with mountain, lake and river. The southern part includes the rich gold valley of the Fraser River, and is well adapted to agriculture and pasturage. In addition to the principal Rocky Mountain range along the eastern boundary, two other parallel ranges naturally divide the country into three sections; viz., (1) the Pacific slope, (2) the Fraser River basin, and (3) the valley of the Upper Columbia. The parallel ranges in British Columbia are the Blue and the Cascade Mountains. The principal peaks are Mounts Brown and Hooker; the former 16,000 feet, and the latter 15,690, above the sea level. Between these two peaks there is a pass called the Athabaska Portage, the summit of which is elevated 7,300 feet above the sea. To the south is the Kootainie Pass, 6,000 feet above the sea-level.

4. *Climate*.—Between the Cascade range and the Pacific coast the climate is equable; but towards the Eastern Rocky Mountains it is very variable. Winter lasts from November till March; but snow seldom remains long on the ground. The prevailing winds are from the north in summer, and from the south and the west in winter. The soil is fertile.

5. *Commerce and Finances*.—The annual value of gold and other products exported from British Columbia and Vancouver Island is about \$10,000,000; imports of British Columbia are about \$5,500,000; of Vancouver Island, \$4,500,000.

---

QUESTIONS.—Describe its chief physical features. What is said of the climate, commerce, imports, exports, and finances of British Columbia and Vancouver Island.

## CHAPTER XXVIII.

## HISTORY OF VANCOUVER ISLAND AND BRITISH COLUMBIA.

## Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Discovery of British Columbia and Vancouver Island.*

1. *Discovery of the Pacific Ocean.*—Balboa discovered the Pacific Ocean in 1513. Cortes explored the Pacific coast of America, from Mexico, in 1536, almost as far north as Cape Mendocino (California), in latitude 40°. Although Magelhaens discovered the strait which bears his name in 1520, it was not until 1615 (nearly a century afterwards) that Schouten, a native of Hoorn in the Netherlands, doubled the Cape which he named Hoorn, or Horn, and thus for the first time reached the Pacific Ocean by sailing directly round the most southern part of the American continent.

2. *Discovery of Vancouver Island.*—Sir Francis Drake is supposed to have gone as far north on the Pacific coast as the Juan de Fuca Strait in 1578; and Cavendish also made some discoveries in the North Pacific in 1587. In that year he captured a Spanish ship off the coast, but put the crew on shore. Juan de Fuca, a Greek sailor, and one of the crew, was subsequently dispatched by the Viceroy of Mexico to make discoveries along the coast northwards. He is reported to have reached, in one of his expeditions, the strait which now bears his name. The Spaniards made various discoveries along the same coast in subsequent years; but it was not until 1778 that Captain Cook, by direction of the British government, explored the coast as far north as Nootka Sound. In that year some London merchants made a settlement at Noot-

---

QUESTIONS.—Give a brief summary of the history of the discovery of the Pacific Ocean, and of Vancouver Island. Give an account of the discoveries by Sir Francis Drake and Captain Cook.

ka Sound for the purpose of establishing a depot for Chinese trade. In 1779, Capt. Mears, R.N., named, and, in part, explored the Strait of Juan de Fuca. In 1792, Capt. Vancouver, R.N., was despatched from England to the Pacific to meet Señor Quadra, a Spanish commissioner, and to settle with him matters of difference, as to territory, which had arisen on the coast between England and Spain. Vancouver was further directed to explore the adjacent coast (with a view to determine the north-west passage), especially the Strait itself and Admiralty Inlet. He afterwards, following the course of an American captain, threaded his way through the islands of the Gulf of Georgia (named by him after George III), to Queen Charlotte's Sound. Out of compliment to the Spanish commissioner, Capt. Vancouver associated Quadra's name with his own in naming the island; but it now bears only the name of Vancouver,—that of Quadra having fallen into disuse.

3. *Discoveries across the Continent.*—In 1771, John Hearn, an employé of the Hudson Bay Company, was induced to explore “the far-off metal river” running northwards into the Arctic Ocean, and thus discovered the Coppermine River and Great Slave Lake. Another distinguished explorer, Sir Alex. Mackenzie, discovered, in his first expedition into the interior, the large river, since known as the Mackenzie River, which also falls into the Arctic Ocean. In 1792, while Vancouver was exploring the coast, Mackenzie, following up the course of the Peace River, crossed the Rocky mountains into British Columbia. Here he reached the Tatouche Tesse, which he supposed to be the Columbia River, but which was afterwards known as the Fraser River. From this river he crossed the country towards the Pacific Ocean, which he reached by way of the Salmon River. In 1806, Simon Fraser, an employé of the North-West Fur Company of Canada,

---

QUESTIONS.—Sketch the discoveries of Mears and Vancouver. How did the Island of Vancouver receive its name? Give a sketch of the discoveries across the continent which were made by Hearn and by Sir A. Mackenzie.



explored the country from Fort Chippewayan (Lake Athabaska), and crossing the Rocky Mountains, formed a trading-post at Fraser Lake, on a tributary of the river to which we have referred, and which was also named after him.

4. *Boundary and Settlement.*—In 1843 Vancouver Island was first occupied by the Hudson Bay Company, and Victoria, the capital, founded. This capital was selected by James Douglas, Esq., the Governor, on behalf of the Hudson Bay Company. In 1844, the Boundary-line between the United States, and what is now known as British Columbia, was determined. In 1849, Vancouver Island was conditionally granted by the Queen to the Company, for the purpose of settlement. Subsequently a dispute arose between the British and American Governments as to the construction of the boundary-treaty, both parties claiming the island of San Juan, which is situated in the Haro Archipelago, as within their territory. In 1856 a joint commission was appointed to settle the dispute, but failed to effect a settlement. In 1872, the Emperor of Germany, to whom the matter had been referred, decided that the boundary line should pass through the Haro channel, thus giving the Island of San Juan to the United States.

5. *Discovery of Gold.*—In 1859 gold was first publicly known to exist in the valley of the Fraser River, and thousands immediately flocked thither. Mining regulations were issued by the governor, and routes projected into the interior, where gold was chiefly found. The existence of gold in these regions was previously known to a few, and especially to the Indians. In 1862 it was discovered in Queen Charlotte's Island.

6. *Colonial Government established.*—In the year 1859 the occupation of Vancouver Island was resumed by the Queen; and it, together with British Columbia (now so

---

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of Fraser's discoveries. Give also a detailed account of the boundary and settlement of British Columbia and Vancouver Island. What dispute arose? What is said of the discovery of gold?

noted for its gold mines,) was erected into two British Crown Colonies, with separate boundaries, but under one government. James Douglas, Esq., the resident Hudson Bay Company's agent, or local governor, was invested with the same authority by Her Majesty, with jurisdiction over both colonies. Laws were first made by the Governor and his Executive Council and promulgated by royal proclamation, after which they were submitted to the Queen and both Houses of Parliament. In 1863, separate Governors were appointed for each of the two colonies; and the name New Westminster was given to the capital of British Columbia by the Queen, at the request of the inhabitants. The site of New Westminster was selected by Colonel Moody, in preference to Fort Langley, which is on the American side of the Fraser River.

7. *Union and Confederation.*—In 1866, the two colonies were united under one Governor and Legislature. In 1871, British Columbia, and Vancouver Island (as one province), joined the Dominion. Such a union of all the colonies of British North America will promote the construction of the great Pacific Railway, so long projected, through British territory. A route for this railway was explored by Captain Palliser in 1858–9. It extends from Fort Garry, at the confluence of the Red River and the Assiniboine, in Manitoba, to New Westminster, and follows, for a portion of the distance, the course of the Assiniboine and South Saskatchewan Rivers, crossing the Rocky Mountains at the Vermillion Pass. The distance from Portland, Maine, to Victoria, Vancouver Island, by this route (by way of Chicago, St. Paul's, Pembina, Saskatchewan, and the Rocky Mountains), is 3,200 miles.

---

QUESTIONS.—How are these colonies governed? What is said of Confederation with the Eastern Provinces; of the proposed route of the Pacific railway? How is the administration of the colonies conducted?



## APPENDIX.

—O—

*Governors of Canada.*—The following are the names of the Governors of Canada since its discovery :

1. *New France.*

Jean François de la Roque,  
Sieur de Roberval, Vice Roi. 1540  
Marquis de la Roche, do. do... 1598

2. *Canada—Royal Government Es-  
tablished.*

Samuel de Champlain, Viceroy 1612  
Marc Antoine de Bras de fer  
de Chateaufort..... 1635  
Chevalier de Montmagny..... 1636  
Chevalier d'Ailleboust de Cou-  
longe..... 1648 and 1657  
Jean de Lauzon..... 1651  
Charles de Lauson Charny..... 1656  
Viscount de Voyer d'Argenson 1658  
Baron du Bois d'Avaugour.... 1661  
Chevalier de Saffray Mésy..... 1663  
Alexandre de Proville Tracy.. 1663  
Chevalier de Coureelles ..... 1665  
Count de Frontenac..... 1672 and 1680  
Sieur de la Barre..... 1682  
Marquis de Denonville.... 1685  
Chevalier de Callières..... 1699  
Marquis de Vaudreuil..... 1703  
Marquis de Beauharnois..... 1726  
Count de Galissonnière..... 1747  
Marquis de la Jonquière... 1749  
Marquis du Quesne de Menne-  
ville..... 1752  
Marquis de Vaudreuil Cavag-  
nal..... 1755

3. *Province of Quebec.*

Gen. James Murray, Gov. Gen. 1765  
Paulus E. Irving, Esq., Presdt. 1766  
Gen. Sir Guy Carleton, (Lord  
Dorchester,) Governor-Gen-  
eral..... 1766, 1774, 1776, and 1793  
Hector T. Cramahe, President 1770  
Gen. Frederick Haldimand... 1773  
Henry Hamilton, Lieut.-Gov.. 1774  
Henry Hope, Esq., do..... 1775

4. *Lower Canada.*

Colonel Clarke, Lieut.-Gov.... 1791  
Gen. Robert Prescott..... 1796  
Sir R. S. Milnes..... 1799  
Hon. Thos. Dunn, Pres., 1805 & 1811  
Sir J. H. Craig..... 1807

Sir George Prevost..... 1811  
Sir G. Drummond, Administ.. 1815  
Gen. John Wilson, Administ.. 1816  
Sir J. Coape, Sherbrooke..... 1816  
Duke of Richmond..... 1818  
Sir James Monk, President... 1819  
Sir Peregrine Maitland..... 1820  
Earl of Dalhousie.... 1820 and 1825  
Sir F. N. Burton, Lieut.-Gov.. 1824  
Sir James Kempt, Administ... 1828  
Lord Aylmer, Administrator... 1837  
Earl of Gosford..... 1837  
Sir J. Colborne, (Lord Seaton). 1838  
Earl of Durham..... 1838  
C. Poulett Thompson, (Lord  
Sydenham..... 1839

5. *Upper Canada.*

Col. J. G. Simcoe, Lieut.-Gov.. 1792  
Hon. Peter Russell, President.. 1792  
General Peter Hunter..... 1799  
Hon. Alexander Grant, Prest.. 1805  
Hon. Francis Gore.... 1806 and 1815  
Sir Isaac Brock, President... 1811  
Sir R. Hare Sheaffe, President. 1813  
Baron F. de Rottenburg, Pres. 1813  
Sir Gordon Drummond..... 1813  
Sir George Murray..... 1815  
Sir Frederick P. Robinson.... 1815  
Hon. Sam. Smith, Adm. 1817 & 1820  
Sir Peregrine Maitland 1818 & 1820  
Sir J. Colborne, (Lord Seaton) 1828  
Sir Francis B. Head..... 1836  
Sir George Arthur..... 1838  
Gen. Sir William Eyre, Adm. 1857  
Lord Viscount Monck... 1861 & 1866  
Gen. Sir John Michel, Adm... 1865

6. *Province of Canada.*

Baron Sydenham and Toronto. 1841  
Gen. Sir R. Jackson, Admin... 1841  
Sir Charles Bagot..... 1843  
Sir Charles (Baron) Metcalfe.. 1843  
Earl Cathcart..... 1845  
Earl of Elgin and Kincardine. 1847  
Sir Edmund W. Head, 1854 and 1857

7. *Dominion of Canada.*

Sir John Young, (Lord Lisgar) 1867  
Earl of Dufferin..... 1872



*Governors of Nova Scotia.*—Not including Senior Councillors who acted as Lieutenant-Governors during the absence or death of that officer, the following is a list of the French and English Governors of Acadie, or Nova Scotia :

#### 1. FRENCH GOVERNORS OF ACADIE AT PORT ROYAL.

M. de Pontrincourt.....	1604	M. de Villebon.....	1687
Isaac de Razillai.....	1633	M. de Brouillon.....	1700
Charles de Charnizay.....	1647	M. de Subercase.....	1706
Charles de la Tour.....	1652	Baron St. Castine.....	1710
M. Manival.....	1685		

#### 2. ENGLISH GOVERNORS OF NOVA SCOTIA AT PORT ROYAL.

Col. Vetch.....	1710	Lawrence Armstrong, Esq.....	1725
Francis Nicholson, Esq.....	1714	Paul Mascarene, Esq.....	1740
Richard Philips, Esq.....	1719		

#### 3. ENGLISH GOVERNORS OF NOVA SCOTIA AT HALIFAX.

Hon. Edward Cornwallis.....	1749	John Wentworth, Esq.....	1792
Peregrine T. Hobson, Esq.....	1752	Sir George Prevost.....	1808
Charles Lawrence, Esq.....	1754	Sir John Coape Sherbrooke....	1811
Hon. Robert Monckton.....	1756	Gen. Darroch.....	1811
Jonathan Belcher, Esq.....	1760	Gen. Smyth.....	1816
Montague Wilmot, Esq.....	1763	Earl of Dalhousie.....	1819
Michael Francklin, Esq. 1722 & 1766		Sir John Kempt. ....	1820
Lord William Campbell, 1766 & 1772		M. Wallace, Esq.....	1826
Francis Legge, Esq.....	1773	Sir Peregrine Maitland.....	1828
Mariot Arbuthnot, Esq.....	1776	Sir Colin Campbell.....	1834
Richard Hughes, Esq.....	1778	Lord Falkland.....	1840
Sir Andrew S. Hammond.....	1781	Sir John Harvey.....	1846
John Parr, Esq.....	1782	Sir J. G. LeMarchant.....	1852
Edward Fanning, Esq.....	1783	The Earl of Mulgrave.....	1858
R. Bulkley, Esq.....	1791	Sir Richard Graves Macdonell.	1864

#### 4. DOMINION GOVERNORS.

Gen. Sir F. W. Williams.....	1865	Hon. Joseph How.....	1873
Sir C. Hastings Doyle.....		Hon. E. Archibald....	1873
Sir E. Kenney.....	1867		

*The Governors and Presidents of New Brunswick have been as follows :*

Guy Carleton, Esq., Gov.....	1784	Gen. Sir Howard Douglas.....	1825
Hon. G. G. Ludlow, President..	1786	Hon. W. Black, President.....	1829
Hon. E. Winslow, President...	1803	Gen. Sir A. Campbell, Gov....	1832
Col. G. Johnston, President...	1808	Gen. Sir John Harvey, Gov ...	1837
Gen. M. Hunter, Governor.....	1809	Sir W. M. G. Colebrooke, Gov..	1841
Gen. W. Balfour, President....	1811	Sir E. Walker Head, Gov.....	1848
Gen. G. S. Smyth, President...	1812	Hon. J. H. T. Manners Sutton..	1854
Gen. Sir J. Saumarez, Pres.....	1813	Hon. A. Gordon, Governor.....	1862
Col. H. W. Hailes, President...	1816	Sir C. Hastings Doyle, Lt-Gov..	1866
Gen. G. S. Smyth, Governor....	1817	Col. F. P. Harding, Lt-Gov....	1867
Hon. Ward Chipman, Pres.....	1823	Hon. L. A. Wilmot, Lt-Gov....	1868
Hon. J. M. Bliss, President....	1824		



My dear Mr. Garrison

myself

17th



#

7







Composition on

Lucy's

character

That is the last

part of it W

---

Composition on

Lucy's

character

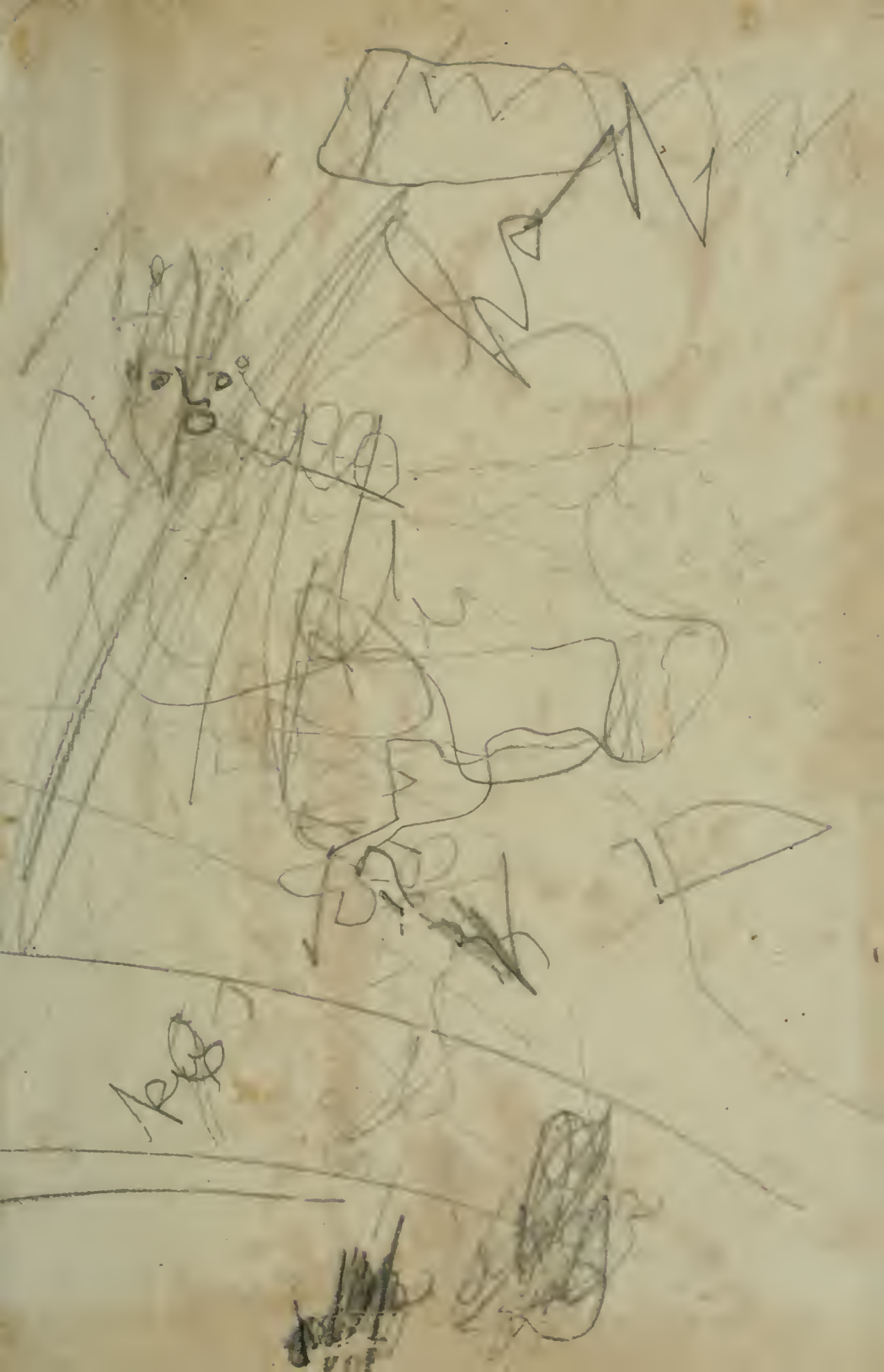
I have the

manuscript

---

W





HISTORY  
OF THE  
DOMINION OF CANADA  
AND OTHER PARTS OF  
BRITISH AMERICA  
J. H. COLEMAN